

# The package **witharrows** for plain-TeX and LaTeX\*

F. Pantigny  
fpantigny@wanadoo.fr

August 24, 2023

## Abstract

The LaTeX package **witharrows** provides environments `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}` similar to the environments `{aligned}` and `{align}` of **amsmath** but with the possibility to draw arrows on the right side of the alignment. These arrows are usually used to give explanations concerning the mathematical calculus presented.

The package **witharrows** is entirely contained in the file `witharrows.sty`. This file may be put in the current directory or in a `texmf` tree. However, the best is to install **witharrows** with a TeX distribution such as MiKTeX, TeX Live or MacTeX.

In fact, **witharrows** may also be used with plain-TeX and, in that case, the only required file is `witharrows.tex`: see p. 23. In what follows, we describe the LaTeX package.

This package can be used with `xelatex`, `lualatex`, `pdflatex` but also by the classical workflow `latex-dvips-ps2pdf` (or Adobe Distiller). This package loads the packages `l3keys2e`, `varwidth`, `tikz` and the Tikz libraries `arrows.meta` and `bending`. The final user only has to load the package with the classical instruction: `\usepackage{witharrows}`.

The arrows are drawn with Tikz and that's why **several compilations may be necessary**.<sup>1</sup>

This package provides an environment `{WithArrows}` to construct alignments of equations with arrows for the explanations on the right side:

```
$\begin{WithArrows} A &= (a+1)^2 \text{\textcolor{purple}{\textsf{\textbf{\Arrow{we expand}}}}} \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 % ----- don't put \\ here \end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (a+1)^2 \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \end{aligned} \quad \text{\textcolor{red}{\textsf{\textbf{\textit{we expand}}}}}$$

The arrow has been drawn with the command `\Arrow` on the row from which it starts. The command `\Arrow` must be used in the second column (the best way is to put it at the end of the second cell of the row as in the previous example).

The environment `{WithArrows}` bears similarities with the environment `{aligned}` of **amsmath** (and **mathtools**). The extension **witharrows** also provides an environment `{DispWithArrows}` which is similar to the environment `{align}` of **amsmath**: cf. p. 17.

---

\*This document corresponds to the version 2.8b of **witharrows**, at the date of 2023/08/24.

<sup>1</sup>If you use Overleaf, Overleaf will do automatically a number compilations sufficient (by using `latexmk`).

# 1 Options for the shape of the arrows

The command `\Arrow` has several options. These options can be put between square brackets, before, or after the mandatory argument.

The option `jump` gives the number<sup>2</sup> of rows the arrow must jump (the default value is, of course, 1).

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
A &= \bigl((a+b)+1\bigr)^2 \Arrow[jump=2]{we expand} \\
&= (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) + 1 \\
&= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 + 2a + 2b + 1
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$A = ((a+b)+1)^2 \\ = (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) + 1 \\ = a^2 + 2ab + b^2 + 2a + 2b + 1 \quad \downarrow \text{we expand}$$

It's possible to put several arrows starting from the same row.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
A &= \bigl((a+b)+1\bigr)^2 \Arrow{} \Arrow{} [jump=2] \\
&= (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) + 1 \\
&= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 + 2a + 2b + 1
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$A = ((a+b)+1)^2 \\ = (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) + 1 \\ = a^2 + 2ab + b^2 + 2a + 2b + 1 \quad \downarrow \downarrow$$

The option `xoffset` shifts the arrow to the right (we usually don't want the arrows to be stucked on the text). The initial value of `xoffset` is 3 mm.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
A &= \bigl((a+b)+1\bigr)^2 \\
\Arrow[xoffset=1cm]{with \texttt{xoffset=1cm}} \\
&= (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) + 1
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$A = ((a+b)+1)^2 \\ = (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) + 1 \quad \downarrow \text{with } xoffset=1cm$$

The arrows are drawn with Tikz. That's why the command `\Arrow` has an option `tikz` which can be used to give to the arrow (in fact, the command `\path` of Tikz) the options proposed by Tikz for such an arrow. The following example gives an thick arrow.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
A &= (a+1)^2 \Arrow[tikz=thick]{we expand} \\
&= a^2 + 2a + 1
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$A = (a+1)^2 \\ = a^2 + 2a + 1 \quad \downarrow \text{we expand}$$

It's also possible to change the arrowheads. For example, we can draw an arrow which goes backwards with the Tikz option `<-`.

---

<sup>2</sup>It's not possible to give a non-positive value to `jump`. See below (p. 2) the way to draw an arrow which goes backwards.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (a+1)^2 \arrow[tikz=<-]{we factorize} \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (a+1)^2 \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \end{aligned} \quad \text{we factorize}$$

It's also possible to suppress both tips of the arrow with the Tikz option “-”.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (a+1)^2 \arrow[tikz=-]{very classical} \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (a+1)^2 \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \end{aligned} \quad \text{very classical}$$

In order to have straight arrows instead of curved ones, we must use the Tikz option “`bend left = 0`”.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (a+1)^2 \arrow[tikz={bend left=0}]{we expand} \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \end{aligned}$$

In fact, it's possible to change more drastically the shape or the arrows with the option `tikz-code` (presented p. 23).

It's possible to use the Tikz option “`text width`” to control the width of the text associated to the arrow.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= \bigl((a+b)+1\bigr)^2 \\ &\Arrow[jump=2,tikz={text width=5.3cm}]{We have done...} \\ &= (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) + 1 \\ &= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 + 2a + 2b + 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} A &= ((a+b)+1)^2 \\ &= (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) + 1 \\ &= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 + 2a + 2b + 1 \end{aligned} \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{We have done a two-stages expansion} \\ \text{but it would have been clever to} \\ \text{expand with the multinomial theorem.} \end{array}$$

In the environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}`, there is an option `wrap-lines`. With this option, the lines of the labels are automatically wrapped on the right: see p. 20.

If we want to change the font of the text associated to the arrow, we can, of course, put a command like `\bfseries`, `\large` or `\sffamily` at the beginning of the text. But, by default, the texts are composed with a combination of `\small` and `\itshape`. When adding `\bfseries` at the beginning of the text, we won't suppress the `\small` and the `\itshape` and we will consequently have a text in a bold, italic and small font.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (a+1)^2 \arrow{\bfseries we expand} \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (a+1)^2 \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \end{aligned} \quad \text{we expand}$$

It's possible to put commands \\ in the text to force new lines<sup>3</sup>. However, if we put a \\, a command of font placed in the beginning of the text will have effect only until the first command \\ (like in an environment `{tabular}`). That's why Tikz gives an option `font` to modify the font of the whole text. Nevertheless, if we use the option `tikz={font={\bfseries}}`, the default specification of `\small` and `\itshape` will be overwritten.

```
\$\\begin{WithArrows}
A & = (a+1)^2 \\Arrow[tikz={font=\\bfseries}]{we expand} \\
& = a^2 + 2a + 1
\\end{WithArrows}\$
```

$$A = (a+1)^2 \\ = a^2 + 2a + 1 \quad \swarrow \text{we expand}$$

If we want exactly the same result as previously, we have to give to the option `font` the value `\itshape\small\bfseries`.

The options can be given directly between square brackets to the environment `\begin{WithArrows}`. There must be no space between the `\begin{WithArrows}` and the opening bracket (`[`) of the options of the environment. Such options apply to all the arrows of the environment.<sup>4</sup>

```
\$\\begin{WithArrows}[tikz=blue]
A & = \\bigl((a+b)+1\\bigr)^2 \\Arrow{first expansion.} \\
& = (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) +1 \\Arrow{second expansion.} \\
& = a^2 + 2ab + b^2 + 2a + 2b +1
\\end{WithArrows}\$
```

$$\begin{aligned}
 A &= ((a+b)+1)^2 \\
 &= (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) + 1 \\
 &= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 + 2a + 2b + 1
 \end{aligned}
 \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{first expansion.} \\ \text{second expansion.} \end{array}$$

The environment `{WithArrows}` has an option `displaystyle`. With this option, all the elements are composed in `\displaystyle` (like in an environment `{aligned}` of `amsmath`).

Without the option `displaystyle`:

```

\$\\begin{WithArrows}
\\int_0^1 (x+1)^2 dx
& = \\int_0^1 (x^2+2x+1) dx
\\Arrow{linearity of integration} & \\
& = \\int_0^1 x^2 dx + 2 \\int_0^1 x dx + \\int_0^1 1 dx \\
& = \\frac{1}{3} + 2\\frac{1}{2} + 1 \\
& = \\frac{7}{3}
\\end{WithArrows}\$
```

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int_0^1 (x+1)^2 dx &= \int_0^1 (x^2 + 2x + 1) dx \\
 &= \int_0^1 x^2 dx + 2 \int_0^1 x dx + \int_0^1 1 dx \\
 &= \frac{1}{3} + 2 \cdot \frac{1}{2} + 1 \\
 &= \frac{7}{3}
 \end{aligned}
 \quad \text{→ linearity of integration}$$

---

<sup>3</sup>By default, this is not possible in a Tikz node. However, in witharrows, the nodes are created with the option `align=left`, and, thus, it becomes possible.

<sup>4</sup>They also apply to the nested environments {WithArrows} (with the logical exceptions of `interline`, `code-before` and `code-after`).

The same example with the option `displaystyle`:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int_0^1 (x+1)^2 dx &= \int_0^1 (x^2 + 2x + 1) dx \\
 &= \int_0^1 x^2 dx + 2 \int_0^1 x dx + \int_0^1 1 dx \quad \text{by linearity of integration} \\
 &= \frac{1}{3} + 2 \cdot \frac{1}{2} + 1 \\
 &= \frac{7}{3}
 \end{aligned}$$

Almost all the options can also be set at the document level with the command `\WithArrowsOptions`. In this case, the scope of the declarations is the current TeX group (these declarations are “semi-global”). For example, if we want all the environments `{WithArrows}` composed in `\displaystyle` with blue arrows, we can write `\WithArrowsOptions{displaystyle,tikz=blue}`.<sup>5</sup>

```
\WithArrowsOptions{displaystyle,tikz=blue}
$\begin{WithArrows}
\sum_{i=1}^n (x_{i+1})^2
& = \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i^2 + 2x_i + 1) \Arrow{by linearity}\\
& = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 + 2\sum_{i=1}^n x_i + n
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned}
 \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i + 1)^2 &= \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i^2 + 2x_i + 1) \\
 &= \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 + 2 \sum_{i=1}^n x_i + n \quad \text{by linearity}
 \end{aligned}$$

The command `\Arrow` is recognized only in the environments `{WithArrows}`. If we have a command `\Arrow` previously defined, it's possible to go on using it outside the environments `{WithArrows}`. However, a previously defined command `\Arrow` may still be useful in an environment `{WithArrows}`. If we want to use it in such an environment, it's possible to change the name of the command `\Arrow` of the package `witharrows`: there is an option `command-name` for this purpose. The new name of the command must be given to the option *without* the leading backslash.

```
\NewDocumentCommand {\Arrow} {} {\longmapsto}
$\begin{WithArrows}[\text{command-name}=Explanation]
f & = \bigl(x \Arrow (x+1)^2\bigr)
\Explanation{we work directly on functions}\\
& = \bigl(x \Arrow x^2+2x+1\bigr)
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned}
 f &= (x \longrightarrow (x+1)^2) \\
 &= (x \longrightarrow x^2 + 2x + 1) \quad \text{we work directly on functions}
 \end{aligned}$$

The environment `{WithArrows}` provides also two options `code-before` and `code-after` for LaTeX code that will be executed at the beginning and at the end of the environment. These options are not designed to be hooks (they are available only at the environment level and they do not apply to the nested environments).

```
$\begin{WithArrows}[\text{code-before} = \color{blue}]
A & = (a+b)^2 \Arrow{\text{we expand}}\\
& = a^2 + 2ab + b^2
\end{WithArrows}$
```

---

<sup>5</sup>It's also possible to configure `witharrows` by modifying the Tikz style `WithArrows/arrow` which is the style used by `witharrows` when drawing an arrow. For example, to have the labels in blue with roman (upright) types, one can use the following instruction: `\tikzset{WithArrows/arrow/.append style = {blue,font = {\rmfamily{}}}}`.

$$A = (a + b)^2 \\ = a^2 + 2ab + b^2 \quad \text{we expand}$$

Special commands are available in `code-after`: a command `\WithArrowsNbLines` which gives the number of lines (=rows) of the current environment (this is a command and not a counter), a special form of the command `\Arrow` and the command `\MultiArrow`: these commands are described in the section concerning the nested environments, p. 14.

## 2 Numbers of columns

So far, we have used the environment `{WithArrows}` with two columns. However, it's possible to use the environment with an arbitrary number of columns with the option `format`. The value given to this option is like the preamble of an environment `{array}`, that is to say a sequence of letters `r`, `c` and `l`, but also `R`, `C` and `L`.

The letters `R`, `C` and `L` add empty groups `{}` which provide correct spaces when these columns contain symbols with the type `\mathrel` (such as `=`,  `$\leq$` , etc.) or `\mathbin` (such as `+`,  `$\times$` , etc.). This system is inspired by the environment `{IEEEeqnarray}` of the package `IEEEtrantools`.

The initial value of the parameter `format` is, in fact, `rL`.

For example, if we want only one column left-aligned, we use the option `format=l`.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}[\text{format} = \text{l}]\\ f(x) \geq g(x) \Arrow{by squaring both sides} \\ f(x)^2 \geq g(x)^2 \Arrow{by moving to left side} \\ f(x)^2 - g(x)^2 \geq 0 \end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &\geq g(x) && \text{by squaring both sides} \\ f(x)^2 &\geq g(x)^2 && \text{by moving to left side} \\ f(x)^2 - g(x)^2 &\geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

In the following example, we use five columns all centered (the environment `{DispWithArrows*}` is presented p. 17).

```
\begin{DispWithArrows*}[\text{format} = \text{cCcCc},\\ \text{wrap-lines},\\ \text{interline}=1mm]\\ k & \text{\textless=}; t & \text{\textless=}; k+1 \\ \frac{1}{k+1} & \leq & \frac{1}{t} & \leq & \frac{1}{k} \\ \int_k^{k+1} \frac{dt}{t} & \leq & \int_k^{k+1} \frac{dt}{t} & \leq & \int_k^{k+1} \frac{dt}{k} \\ \frac{1}{k+1} & \leq & \ln(k+1) - \ln(k) & \leq & \frac{1}{k} \end{DispWithArrows*}
```

$$\begin{aligned} k &\leq t &\leq k+1 \\ \frac{1}{k+1} &\leq \frac{1}{t} &\leq \frac{1}{k} \\ \int_k^{k+1} \frac{dt}{k+1} &\leq \int_k^{k+1} \frac{dt}{t} &\leq \int_k^{k+1} \frac{dt}{k} \\ \frac{1}{k+1} &\leq \ln(k+1) - \ln(k) &\leq \frac{1}{k} \end{aligned}$$

*we can integrate the inequalities since  $k \leq k+1$*

### 3 Precise positioning of the arrows

The environment `{WithArrows}` defines, during the composition of the array, two series of nodes materialized in red in the following example.<sup>6</sup>

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int_{\frac{\pi}{4}}^0 \ln\left(1 + \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{4} - u\right)\right)(-du) \\
 &= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln\left(1 + \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{4} - u\right)\right) du \\
 &= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln\left(1 + \frac{1 - \tan u}{1 + \tan u}\right) du \\
 &= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln\left(\frac{1 + \tan u + 1 - \tan u}{1 + \tan u}\right) du \\
 &= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln\left(\frac{2}{1 + \tan u}\right) du \\
 &= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} (\ln 2 - \ln(1 + \tan u)) du \\
 &= \frac{\pi}{4} \ln 2 - \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln(1 + \tan u) du \\
 &= \frac{\pi}{4} \ln 2 - I
 \end{aligned}$$

The nodes of the left are at the end of each line of text. These nodes will be called *left nodes*. The nodes of the right side are aligned vertically on the right side of the array. These nodes will be called *right nodes*.

By default, the arrows use the right nodes. We will say that they are in `rr` mode (`r` for *right*). These arrows are vertical (we will say that an arrow is *vertical* when its two ends have the same abscissa).

However, it's possible to use the left nodes, or a combination of left and right nodes, with one of the options `lr`, `rl` and `ll` (`l` for *left*). Those arrows are, usually, not vertical.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Therefore } I &= \int_{\frac{\pi}{4}}^0 \ln\left(1 + \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{4} - u\right)\right)(-du) \\
 &= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln\left(1 + \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{4} - u\right)\right) du \\
 &= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln\left(1 + \frac{1 - \tan u}{1 + \tan u}\right) du \\
 &= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln\left(\frac{1 + \tan u + 1 - \tan u}{1 + \tan u}\right) du \\
 &= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln\left(\frac{2}{1 + \tan u}\right) du \\
 &= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} (\ln 2 - \ln(1 + \tan u)) du \\
 &= \frac{\pi}{4} \ln 2 - \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln(1 + \tan u) du \\
 &= \frac{\pi}{4} \ln 2 - I
 \end{aligned}$$

*This arrow uses the lr option.*

*This arrow uses a ll option and a jump equal to 2*

There is also an option called `i` (`i` for *intermediate*). With this option, the arrow is vertical and at the leftmost position.

---

<sup>6</sup>The option `show-nodes` can be used to materialize the nodes. The nodes are in fact Tikz nodes of shape “rectangle”, but with zero width. An arrow between two nodes starts at the *south* anchor of the first node and arrives at the *north* anchor of the second node.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
(a+b)(a+ib)(a-b)(a-ib)
& = (a+b)(a-b)\cdot(a+ib)(a-ib) \\
& = (a^2-b^2)(a^2+b^2) \Arrow[i]{because $(x-y)(x+y)=x^2-y^2$} \\
& = a^4-b^4
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned}(a+b)(a+ib)(a-b)(a-ib) &= (a+b)(a-b) \cdot (a+ib)(a-ib) \\ &= (a^2-b^2)(a^2+b^2) \\ &= a^4-b^4\end{aligned}\quad \left.\right\} \text{because } (x-y)(x+y) = x^2 - y^2$$

The environment `{WithArrows}` gives also a `group` option. With this option, *all* the arrows of the environment are grouped on a same vertical line and at a leftmost position.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}[displaystyle,group]
2xy'-3y=\sqrt{x}
&\Longleftrightarrow 2x(K'y_0+Ky'_0)-3Ky_0=\sqrt{x} \\
&\Longleftrightarrow 2xK'y_0+K(2xy'_0-3y_0)=\sqrt{x} \\
&\Longleftrightarrow 2xK'y_0=\sqrt{x} \\
&\Longleftrightarrow 2xK'x^{\frac{3}{2}}=x^{\frac{1}{2}} \quad \left.\right\} \text{we replace } y_0 \text{ by its value} \\
&\Longleftrightarrow K'=\frac{1}{2x^{\frac{1}{2}}} \quad \left.\right\} \text{simplification of the } x \\
&\Longleftrightarrow K=-\frac{1}{2x} \quad \left.\right\} \text{antiderivation}
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned}2xy' - 3y &= \sqrt{x} \iff 2x(K'y_0 + Ky'_0) - 3Ky_0 = \sqrt{x} \\ &\iff 2xK'y_0 + K(2xy'_0 - 3y_0) = \sqrt{x} \\ &\iff 2xK'y_0 = \sqrt{x} \\ &\iff 2xK'x^{\frac{3}{2}} = x^{\frac{1}{2}} \quad \left.\right\} \text{we replace } y_0 \text{ by its value} \\ &\iff K' = \frac{1}{2x^{\frac{1}{2}}} \quad \left.\right\} \text{simplification of the } x \\ &\iff K = -\frac{1}{2x} \quad \left.\right\} \text{antiderivation}\end{aligned}$$

The environment `{WithArrows}` gives also a `groups` option (with a *s* in the name). With this option, the arrows are divided into several “groups”. Each group is a set of connected<sup>7</sup> arrows. All the arrows of a given group are grouped on a same vertical line and at a leftmost position.

$$\begin{aligned}A &= B \\ &= C + D \quad \left.\right\} \text{one} \\ &= D' \quad \left.\right\} \text{two} \\ &= E + F + G + H + I \\ &= K + L + M \quad \left.\right\} \text{three} \\ &= N \quad \left.\right\} \text{four} \\ &= O\end{aligned}$$

In an environment which uses the option `group` or the option `groups`, it's still possible to give an option of position (`ll`, `lr`, `rl`, `rr` or `i`) to an individual arrow<sup>8</sup>. Such arrow will be drawn irrespective of the groups. It's also possible to start a new group by applying the option `new-group` to an given arrow.

If desired, the option `group` or the option `groups` can be given to the command `\WithArrowsOptions` so that it will become the default value. In this case, it's still possible to come back to the default behaviour for a given environment `{WithArrows}` with the option `rr`: `\begin{WithArrows}[rr]`

---

<sup>7</sup>More precisely: for each arrow  $a$ , we note  $i(a)$  the number of its initial row and  $f(a)$  the number of its final row; for two arrows  $a$  and  $b$ , we say that  $a \sim b$  when  $[i(a), f(a)] \cap [i(b), f(b)] \neq \emptyset$ ; the groups are the equivalence classes of the transitive closure of  $\sim$ .

<sup>8</sup>Such arrow will be called *independent* in the technical documentation

In the following example, we have used the option `groups` for the environment and the option `new-group` for the last arrow (that's why the last arrow is not aligned with the others).

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{k=0}^n \frac{\cos kx}{\cos^k x} &= \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{\Re(e^{ikx})}{(\cos x)^k} \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^n \Re\left(\frac{e^{ikx}}{(\cos x)^k}\right) \\
&= \Re\left(\sum_{k=0}^n \left(\frac{e^{ix}}{\cos x}\right)^k\right) \\
&= \Re\left(\frac{1 - \left(\frac{e^{ix}}{\cos x}\right)^{n+1}}{1 - \frac{e^{ix}}{\cos x}}\right) \\
&= \Re\left(\frac{1 - \frac{e^{i(n+1)x}}{\cos^{n+1} x}}{1 - \frac{e^{ix}}{\cos x}}\right) \\
&= \Re\left(\frac{\frac{\cos^{n+1} x - e^{i(n+1)x}}{\cos^{n+1} x}}{\frac{\cos x - e^{ix}}{\cos x}}\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{\cos^n x} \Re\left(\frac{\cos^{n+1} x - e^{i(n+1)x}}{\cos x - e^{ix}}\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{\cos^n x} \Re\left(\frac{\cos^{n+1} x - (\cos(n+1)x + i \sin(n+1)x)}{\cos x - (\cos x + i \sin x)}\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{\cos^n x} \Re\left(\frac{(\cos^{n+1} x - \cos(n+1)x) - i \sin(n+1)x}{-i \sin x}\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{\cos^n x} \cdot \frac{\sin(n+1)x}{\sin x}
\end{aligned}$$

(cos x)<sup>k</sup> is real  
 $\Re(z + z') = \Re(z) + \Re(z')$   
sum of terms of a geometric progression  
algebraic calculation  
reduction to common denominator  
 $\Re(kz) = k \cdot \Re(z)$  if  $k$  is real  
algebraic form of the complexes

## 4 The option “o” for individual arrows

Let's consider, in a given environment, two arrows called  $a$  and  $b$ . We will note  $i_a$  and  $i_b$  the numbers of the initial lines of  $a$  et  $b$  dans  $f_a$  and  $f_b$  the numbers of the final lines. Of course, we have  $i_a \leq f_a$  and  $i_b \leq f_b$

We will say that the arrow  $a$  *covers* the arrow  $b$  when  $i_a \leq i_b \leq f_b \leq f_a$ . We will also say that the arrow  $a$  is *over* the arrow  $b$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
A &= B \\
&= C \\
&= D \\
&= E
\end{aligned}$$

In the example on the right, the red arrow covers the blue one.

On the local level, there exists a key `o`. This key is available only when the option `group` or the option `groups` is in force (cf. p. 8).

An arrow of type `o` is drawn with an horizontal shift (such as those set by `xoffset`) automatically computed by taking into account the arrows covered by our arrow.<sup>9</sup>

```

$ \begin{WithArrows}[groups]
A &= B      \Arrow{one}\Arrow[o,jump=3]{two}{direct} \\
&= C + C \Arrow{two} \\
&= D + D + D \Arrow{three} \\
&= E + E \\
&= F + F
\end{WithArrows} $

```

$$\begin{aligned}
A &= B \\
&= C + C \\
&= D + D + D \\
&= E + E \\
&= F + F
\end{aligned}$$

one  
two  
three  
direct

<sup>9</sup> Among the covered arrows, the independent ones (that is to say with an explicit key `rr`, `ll`, `lr`, `rl`, `i`, `up` or `down`) are not taken into account in the computation of the value of `xoffset`.

Arrows of type `o` may themselves be covered by other arrows of type `o`.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}[groups]
A & = B \Arrow{one}\Arrow[o,jump=2]{two}\Arrow[o,jump=3]{three} \\
& = C \\
& = D \\
& = E + E + E + E + E + E + E
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= B \\ &= C \\ &= D \\ &= E + E + E + E + E + E \end{aligned}$$

The horizontal space between an arrow of type `o` and the arrows immediately covered is fixed by the dimension `xoffset-for-o-arrows` which can be set with the command `\WithArrowsOptions` (initial value: 2 mm).

## 5 The options “up” and “down” for individual arrows

At the local level, there are also two options for individual arrows, called “up” and “down”. The following example illustrates these types of arrows:

```
\begin{WithArrows}
A &= B
\Arrow[up]{an arrow of type up} \\
&= C + C + C + C + C + C + C + C \\
&= C + C + C + C + C + C + C + C
\Arrow[down]{an arrow of type down} \\
&= E + E
\end{WithArrows})
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= B \xrightarrow{\text{an arrow of type up}} \\ &= C + C + C + C + C + C + C + C \\ &= C + C + C + C + C + C + C + C \\ &= E + E \xleftarrow{\text{an arrow of type down}} \end{aligned}$$

The options `up` and `down` require the Tikz library `calc`. If it has not been previously loaded by the user, an error will be raised.

In fact, the options `up` and `down` may be used with a value which is a list of couples key-value.

- The key `radius` is the radius of the rounded corner of the arrow.<sup>10</sup>
- The key `width` is the width of the (horizontal part of) the arrow:
  - with the value `max`, the width of the arrow is adjusted with respect of the position of the nodes (that's the behaviour by default of the arrows `up` and `down` as shown in the previous example);

---

<sup>10</sup>The initial value of this parameter is 4 pt, which is the default value of the “rounded corners” of Tikz.

- with a numerical value, the width of the arrow is directly fixed to that numerical value;
- with the value `min`, the width of the arrow is adjusted with respect to the contents of the label of the arrow.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
A & = B
\Arrow[up={radius=0pt,width=2cm}]{we try} \\
& = C + C + C + C + C + C + C + C
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{array}{l} A = B \\ = C + C + C + C + C + C + C + C \end{array} \overbrace{\hspace{2cm}}^{we\ try}$$

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
A & = B
\Arrow[up={width=min}]{we try} \\
& = C + C + C + C + C + C + C + C
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{array}{l} A = B \\ = C + C + C + C + C + C + C + C \end{array} \overbrace{\hspace{1cm}}^{we\ try}$$

The options relative to the arrows `up` and `down` can be fixed at the global or environment level with the key `up-and-down`. This key may also be used as prefix as illustrated now.

```
\WithArrowsOptions{up-and-down/width=min}
```

## 6 Comparison with the environment `{aligned}`

`{WithArrows}` bears similarities with the environment `{aligned}` of the extension `amsmath`. These are only similarities because `{WithArrows}` has not been written upon the environment `{aligned}`.<sup>11</sup>

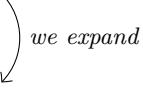
As in the environments of `amsmath`, it's possible to change the spacing between two given rows with the option of the command `\backslash` of end of line (it's also possible to use `\backslash*` but it has exactly the same effect as `\backslash` since an environment `{WithArrows}` is always unbreakable). This option is designed to be used with positive values only.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
A & = (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \\ [2ex]
& = a^2 + 2a + 1
\end{WithArrows}$
```

---

<sup>11</sup>In fact, it's possible to use the package `witharrows` without the package `amsmath`.

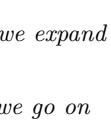
$$\begin{aligned} A &= (a + 1)^2 \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \end{aligned}$$



In the environments of `amsmath` (or `mathtools`), the spacing between rows is fixed by a parameter called `\jot` (it's a dimension and not a skip). That's also the case for the environment `{WithArrows}`. An option `jot` has been given to the environment `{WithArrows}` in order to change the value of this parameter `\jot` for a given environment.<sup>12</sup>

```
$\begin{aligned} &\begin{aligned}[displaystyle,jot=2ex] F &= \frac{1}{2}G && \backslash Arrow{we expand}\\ &= H + \frac{1}{2}K && \backslash Arrow{we go on}\\ &= K && \end{aligned} \\ &\end{aligned}$
```

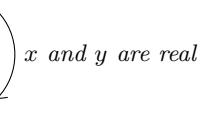
$$\begin{aligned} F &= \frac{1}{2}G \\ &= H + \frac{1}{2}K \\ &= K \end{aligned}$$



However, this new value of `\jot` will also be used in other alignments included in the environment `{WithArrows}`:

```
$\begin{aligned} &\begin{aligned}[jot=2ex] \varphi(x,y) = 0 &\& \backslash Leftrightarrow (x+y)^2 + (x+2y)^2 = 0 \\ &\& \backslash Arrow{\$x\$ and \$y\$ are real}\\ &\& \backslash Leftrightarrow \left. \begin{aligned} x+y &= 0 \\ x+2y &= 0 \end{aligned} \right\} \\ &\& \backslash begin{aligned} \end{aligned} \\ &\& \backslash end{aligned} \\ &\& \backslash right. \\ &\end{aligned}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi(x,y) = 0 &\Leftrightarrow (x+y)^2 + (x+2y)^2 = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow \left. \begin{aligned} x+y &= 0 \\ x+2y &= 0 \end{aligned} \right\} \end{aligned}$$



Maybe this doesn't correspond to the desired outcome. That's why an option `interline` is proposed. It's possible to use a skip (=glue) for this option.

```
$\begin{aligned} &\begin{aligned}[interline=2ex] \varphi(x,y) = 0 &\& \backslash Leftrightarrow (x+y)^2 + (x+2y)^2 = 0 \\ &\& \backslash Arrow{\$x\$ and \$y\$ are real}\\ &\& \backslash Leftrightarrow \left. \begin{aligned} x+y &= 0 \\ x+2y &= 0 \end{aligned} \right\} \\ &\& \backslash begin{aligned} \end{aligned} \\ &\& \backslash end{aligned} \\ &\& \backslash right. \\ &\end{aligned}$
```

---

<sup>12</sup>It's also possible to change `\jot` with the environment `{spreadlines}` of `mathtools`.

$$\varphi(x, y) = 0 \Leftrightarrow (x + y)^2 + (x + 2y)^2 = 0 \quad \left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x + y = 0 \\ x + 2y = 0 \end{cases} \end{array} \right\} x \text{ and } y \text{ are real}$$

Like the environment `{aligned}`, `{WithArrows}` has an option of placement which can assume the values `t`, `c` or `b`. However, the initial value is not `c` but `t`. If desired, it's possible to have the `c` value as the default with the command `\WithArrowsOptions{c}` at the beginning of the document.

```
So\enskip
$ \begin{WithArrows}
A &= (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \\
&= a^2 + 2a + 1
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\text{So } A = (a + 1)^2 \quad \left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \end{array} \right\} \text{we expand}$$

$$= a^2 + 2a + 1$$

The value `c` may be useful, for example, if we want to add curly braces:

```
Let's set\enskip \$\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\begin{WithArrows}[c]
f(x) &= 3x^3+2x^2-x+4 \\
g(x) &= 5x^2-5x+6
\end{WithArrows}\\
\right. \$
```

$$\text{Let's set } \left. \begin{array}{l} f(x) = 3x^3 + 2x^2 - x + 4 \\ g(x) = 5x^2 - 5x + 6 \end{array} \right\} \text{both are polynoms}$$

Unlike `{aligned}`, the environment `{WithArrows}` uses `\textstyle` by default. Once again, it's possible to change this behaviour with `\WithArrowsOptions{displaystyle}`.

The following example is composed with `{aligned}`:

$$\left\{ \begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i + 1)^2 &= \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i^2 + 2x_i + 1) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 + 2 \sum_{i=1}^n x_i + n \end{aligned} \right.$$

The following is composed with `{WithArrows}[c,displaystyle]`. The results are strictly identical.<sup>13</sup>

$$\left\{ \begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i + 1)^2 &= \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i^2 + 2x_i + 1) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 + 2 \sum_{i=1}^n x_i + n \end{aligned} \right.$$

---

<sup>13</sup>In versions of `amsmath` older than the 5 nov. 2016, a thin space was added on the left of an environment `{aligned}`. The new versions do not add this space and neither do `{WithArrows}`.

## 7 Arrows in nested environments

The environments `{WithArrows}` can be nested. In this case, the options given to the encompassing environment applies also to the inner ones (with logical exceptions for `interline`, `code-before` and `code-after`). The command `Arrow` can be used as usual in each environment `{WithArrows}`.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
\varphi(x,y)=0
& \Leftrightarrow (x+2y)^2+(2x+4y)^2 = 0 \Arrow{the numbers are real} \\
& \Leftrightarrow
\left.\begin{aligned}
& x+2y &= 0 \\ 
& 2x+4y &= 0
\end{aligned}\right. \\\
\end{WithArrows} \right. \\\
& \Leftrightarrow
\left.\begin{aligned}
& x+2y &= 0 \text{ \Arrow[tikz=-]{the same equation}} \\ 
& x+2y &= 0
\end{aligned}\right. \\\
\end{WithArrows} \right. \\\
& \Leftrightarrow \Leftrightarrow x+2y=0
\end{WithArrows} $
```

$$\begin{aligned}
\varphi(x,y) = 0 &\Leftrightarrow (x+2y)^2 + (2x+4y)^2 = 0 \\
&\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x+2y = 0 \\ 2x+4y = 0 \end{cases} \text{ the numbers are real} \\
&\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x+2y = 0 \\ x+2y = 0 \end{cases} \text{ the same equation} \\
&\Leftrightarrow x+2y = 0
\end{aligned}$$

However, one may want to draw an arrow between rows that are not in the same environment. For example, one may want to draw the following arrow :

$$\begin{aligned}
\varphi(x,y) = 0 &\Leftrightarrow (x+2y)^2 + (2x+4y)^2 = 0 \\
&\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x+2y = 0 \\ 2x+4y = 0 \end{cases} \\
&\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x+2y = 0 \\ x+2y = 0 \end{cases} \text{ division by 2} \\
&\Leftrightarrow x+2y = 0
\end{aligned}$$

Such a construction is possible by using `\Arrow` in the `code-after` option. Indeed, in `code-after`, a special version of `\Arrow` is available (we will call it “`\Arrow in code-after`”).

A command `\Arrow in code-after` takes three arguments :

- a specification of the start row of the arrow ;
- a specification of the end row of the arrow ;
- the label of the arrow.

As usual, it's also possible to give options within square brackets before or after the three arguments. However, these options are limited (see below).

The specification of the row is constructed with the position of the concerned environment in the nesting tree, followed (after an hyphen) by the number of that row.

In the previous example, there are two environments `{WithArrows}` nested in the main environment `{WithArrows}`.

$$\begin{aligned}
\varphi(x, y) = 0 &\Leftrightarrow (x + 2y)^2 + (2x + 4y)^2 = 0 \\
&\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x + 2y = 0 \\ 2x + 4y = 0 \end{cases} \quad \text{environment number 1} \\
&\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x + 2y = 0 \\ x + 2y = 0 \end{cases} \quad \text{environment number 2} \\
&\Leftrightarrow x + 2y = 0
\end{aligned}$$

The arrow we want to draw starts in the row 2 of the sub-environment number 1 (and therefore, the specification is 1-2) and ends in the row 2 of the sub-environment number 2 (and therefore, the specification is 2-2). We can draw the arrow with the following command `\Arrow` in `code-after` :

```
$\begin{WithArrows}[code-after = \Arrow{1-2}{2-2}{division by $2$} ]
\varphi(x,y)=0
& \Leftrightarrow (x+2y)^2+(2x+4y)^2 = 0 \\
.....
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned}
\varphi(x, y) = 0 &\Leftrightarrow (x + 2y)^2 + (2x + 4y)^2 = 0 \\
&\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x + 2y = 0 \\ 2x + 4y = 0 \end{cases} \\
&\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x + 2y = 0 \\ x + 2y = 0 \end{cases} \quad \text{division by 2} \\
&\Leftrightarrow x + 2y = 0
\end{aligned}$$

The options allowed for a command `\Arrow` in `code-after` are: `ll`, `lr`, `rl`, `rr`, `v`, `xoffset`, `tikz` and `tikz-code`. Except `v`, which is specific to `\Arrow` in `code-after`, all these options have their usual meaning.

With the option `v`, the arrow drawn is vertical to an abscissa computed with the start row and the end row only : the intermediate lines are not taken into account unlike with the option `i`. Currently, the option `i` is not available for the command `\Arrow` in `code-after`. However, it's always possible to translate an arrow with `xoffset` (or `xshift` of Tikz).

```
$\begin{WithArrows}[code-after=\Arrow[v]{1-2}{2-2}{division by $2$}]
\varphi(x,y)=0
& \Leftrightarrow (x+2y)^2+(2x+4y)^2 = 0 \\
.....
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned}
\varphi(x, y) = 0 &\Leftrightarrow (x + 2y)^2 + (2x + 4y)^2 = 0 \\
&\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x + 2y = 0 \\ 2x + 4y = 0 \end{cases} \\
&\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x + 2y = 0 \\ x + 2y = 0 \end{cases} \quad \text{division by 2} \\
&\Leftrightarrow x + 2y = 0
\end{aligned}$$

The package `witharrows` gives also another command available only in `code-after`: the command `\MultiArrow`. This command draws a “rak”. The list of the rows of the environment concerned by this rak are given in the first argument of the command `\MultiArrow`. This list is given with the syntax of the list in a `\foreach` command of `pgffor`.

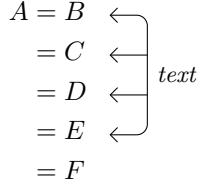
```
$\begin{WithArrows}[tikz = rounded corners,
code-after = {\MultiArrow{1,...,4}{text}} ]
A & = B \\
& = C \\

```

```

& = D \\
& = E \\
& = F
\end{WithArrows}$

```



As of now, there is no option available for the command \MultiArrow (maybe in a future release).

## 8 Arrows from outside environments {WithArrows}

If someone wants to draw arrows from outside the environments `{WithArrows}`, he can use the Tikz nodes created in the environments.

The Tikz name of a node created by `witharrows` is prefixed by `wa-`. Then, we have a list of numbers which give the position in the nesting tree and the row number in the environment. At the end, we have the suffix `l` for a “left node” and `r` for a “right node”.

For illustrative purposes, we give an example of nested environments `{WithArrows}`, and, for each “right node”, the name of that node.<sup>14</sup>

The package `witharrows` provides some tools facilitating the use of these nodes:

- the command `\WithArrowsLastEnv` gives the number of the last environment of level 0 (*i.e.* which is not included in another environment of the package `witharrows`);
  - a name can be given to a given environment with the option `name` and, in this case, the nodes created in the environment will have aliases constructed with this name;
  - the Tikz style `WithArrows/arrow` is the style used by `witharrows` when drawing an arrow<sup>15</sup>;
  - the Tikz style `WithArrows/arrow/tips` is the style for the tip of the arrow (loaded by `WithArrows/arrow`).

For example, we can draw an arrow from `wa-45-2-1-2-r.south` to `wa-45-3-2-r.north` with the following Tikz command.

---

<sup>14</sup>There is an option `show-node-names` to show the names of these nodes.

<sup>15</sup> More precisely, this style is given to the Tikz option “`every path`” before drawing the arrow with the code of the option `tikz-code`. This style is modified (in TeX scopes) by the option `tikz` of `witharrows`.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}[remember picture,overlay]
\draw [WithArrows/arrow]
  ([xshift=3mm]wa-\WithArrowsLastEnv-2-1-2-r.south)
  to ([xshift=3mm]wa-\WithArrowsLastEnv-3-2-r.north) ;
\end{tikzpicture}
```

$$\begin{aligned}
 A &\triangleleft B + B + B + B + B + B + B + B + B + B + B \\
 &\triangleleft \begin{cases} C \triangleleft D \\ E \triangleleft F \end{cases} \\
 &\triangleleft \begin{cases} G \triangleleft H + H + H + H + H + H + H \\ I \triangleleft \begin{cases} J \triangleleft K \\ L \triangleleft M \end{cases} \end{cases} \\
 &\triangleleft \begin{cases} N \triangleleft O \\ P \triangleleft Q \end{cases}
 \end{aligned}$$

In this case, it would be easier to use a command `\Arrow` in `code-after` but this is an example to explain how the Tikz nodes created by `witharrows` can be used.

In the following example, we create two environments `{WithArrows}` named “first” and “second” and we draw a line between a node of the first and a node of the second.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}[\name=first]
A & = B \\
& = C
\end{WithArrows}$

\bigskip
$\begin{WithArrows}[\name=second]
A' & = B' \\
& = C'
\end{WithArrows}$

\begin{tikzpicture}[remember picture,overlay]
\draw [WithArrows/arrow]
  ([xshift=3mm]first-1-r.south)
  to ([xshift=3mm]second-1-r.north) ;
\end{tikzpicture}
```

$$\begin{array}{c}
 A = B \\
 = C \\
 A' = B' \\
 = C'
 \end{array}$$

## 9 The environment `{DispWithArrows}`

As previously said, the environment `{WithArrows}` bears similarities with the environment `{aligned}` of `amsmath` (and `mathtools`). This extension also provides an environment `{DispWithArrows}` which is similar to the environments `{align}` and `{flalign}` of `amsmath`.

The environment `{DispWithArrows}` must be used *outside* math mode. Like `{align}`, it should be used in horizontal mode.

```
\begin{DispWithArrows}
A & = (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \\
& = a^2 + 2a + 1
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

$$A = (a + 1)^2 \quad \quad \quad (1)$$

$$= a^2 + 2a + 1 \quad \quad \quad \downarrow \text{we expand} \quad \quad \quad (2)$$

It's possible to use the command `\notag` (or `\nonumber`) to suppress a tag.

It's possible to use the command `\tag` to put a special tag (e.g.  $\star$ ).

It's also possible to put a label to the line of an equation with the command `\label`.

These commands must be in the second column of the environment.

```
\begin{DispWithArrows}
A & = (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \notag \\
& = a^2 + 2a + 1 \tag{$\star$} \label{my-equation}
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

$$A = (a + 1)^2 \quad \quad \quad (1)$$

$$= a^2 + 2a + 1 \quad \quad \quad \downarrow \text{we expand} \quad \quad \quad (\star)$$

A link to the equation  $(\star)$ .<sup>16</sup>

If `amsmath` (or `mathtools`) is loaded, it's also possible to use `\tag*` which, as in `amsmath`, typesets the tag without the parentheses. For example, it's possible to use it to put the symbol `\square` of `amssymb`. This symbol is often used to mark the end of a proof.<sup>17</sup>

```
\begin{DispWithArrows}
A & = (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \notag \\
& = a^2 + 2a + 1 \tag*{$\square$}
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

$$A = (a + 1)^2 \quad \quad \quad (1)$$

$$= a^2 + 2a + 1 \quad \quad \quad \downarrow \text{we expand} \quad \quad \quad \square$$

It's also possible to suppress all the autogenerated numbers with the boolean option `notag` (or `nonumber`), at the global or environment level. There is also an environment `{DispWithArrows*}` which suppresses all these numbers.<sup>18</sup>

```
\begin{DispWithArrows*}
A & = (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \\
& = a^2 + 2a + 1
\end{DispWithArrows*}
```

$$A = (a + 1)^2 \quad \quad \quad (1)$$

$$= a^2 + 2a + 1 \quad \quad \quad \downarrow \text{we expand}$$

In fact, there is also another option `tagged-lines` which can be used to control the lines that will be tagged. The value of this option is a list of the numbers of the lines that must to be tagged. For example, with the option `tagged-lines = {first,3,last}`, only the first, the third and the last line of the environment will be tagged. There is also the special value `all` which means that all the lines will be tagged.

```
\begin{DispWithArrows*}[tagged-lines = last]
A & = A_1 \Arrow{first stage} \\
& = A_2 \Arrow{second stage} \\
& = A_3
\end{DispWithArrows*}
```

---

<sup>16</sup>In this document, the references have been customized with `\labelformat{equation}{(#1)}` in the preamble.

<sup>17</sup>Notice that the environment `{DispWithArrows}` is compatible with the command `\qedhere` of `amsthm`.

<sup>18</sup>Even in this case, it's possible to put a "manual tag" with the command `\tag`.

$$\begin{aligned}
A &= A_1 \\
&= A_2 \\
&= A_3
\end{aligned}
\quad
\begin{array}{l}
\text{\scriptsize } \downarrow \text{\scriptsize first stage} \\
\text{\scriptsize } \downarrow \text{\scriptsize second stage}
\end{array}
\tag{3}$$

With the option `fleqn`, the environment is composed flush left (in a way similar to the option `fleqn` of the standard classes of LaTeX). In this case, the left margin can be controlled with the option `mathindent` (with a name inspired by the parameter `\mathindent` of standard LaTeX. The initial value of this parameter is 25 pt.

```
\begin{DispWithArrows}[fleqn,mathindent = 1cm]
A &= (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \\
&= a^2 + 2a + 1
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

$$A = (a + 1)^2 \tag{4}$$

$$= a^2 + 2a + 1 \quad \text{\scriptsize } \downarrow \text{\scriptsize we expand} \tag{5}$$

*Remark:* By design, the option `fleqn` of `witharrows` is independent of the option `fleqn` of LaTeX. Indeed, since the environments of `witharrows` are meant to be used with arrows on the right side, the user may want to use `witharrows` with the option `fleqn` (in order to have more space on the right of the equations for the arrows) while still centering the classical equations.

If the option `leqno` is used as a class option, the labels will be composed on the left also for the environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}`.<sup>19</sup>

If the package `amsmath` is loaded, it's possible to use the command `\intertext` in the environments `{DispWithArrows}`. It's also possible to use the environment `{subequations}`. However, there is, for the environments `{DispWithArrows}`, an option `subequations` to encapsulate the environment in an environment `{subequations}`.

In the following example, the key `{subequations}` is fixed by the command `\WithArrowsOptions`. Each environment `{DispWithArrows}` will be subnumerated (in the scope of `\WithArrowsOptions`)

```
\WithArrowsOptions{subequations}
First environment.
\begin{DispWithArrows}
A &= B \\
&= C
\end{DispWithArrows}
Second environment.
\begin{DispWithArrows}
D &= E \\
&= F
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

First environment.

$$A = B \tag{6a}$$

$$= C \tag{6b}$$

Second environment.

$$D = E \tag{7a}$$

$$= F \tag{7b}$$

---

<sup>19</sup>The package `amsmath` has an option `leqno` but `witharrows`, of course, is not aware of that option: `witharrows` only checks the option `leqno` of the document class.

If there is not enough space to put the tag at the end of a line, there is no automatic positioning of the label on the next line (as in the environments of `amsmath`). However, in `{DispWithArrows}`, the user can use the command `\tag{nextline}` to manually require the composition of the tag on the following line.

```
\begin{DispWithArrows}[displaystyle]
S_{2(p+1)}
& = \sum_{k=1}^{2(p+1)} (-1)^k k^2 \\
& \smash[b]{= \sum_{k=1}^{2p} (-1)^k k^2} \tag{nextline} \\
& = S_{2p} - (2p+1)^2 + (2p+2)^2 \\
& = p(2p+1) - (2p+1)^2 + (2p+2)^2 \\
& = 2p^2 + 5p + 3
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

$$S_{2(p+1)} = \sum_{k=1}^{2(p+1)} (-1)^k k^2 \quad (8)$$

$$= \sum_{k=1}^{2p} (-1)^k k^2 + (-1)^{2p+1}(2p+1)^2 + (-1)^{2p+2}(2p+2)^2 \quad (9)$$

$$= S_{2p} - (2p+1)^2 + (2p+2)^2 \quad (10)$$

$$= 2p^2 + p - 4p^2 - 4p - 1 + 4p^2 + 8p + 4 \quad (11)$$

$$= 2p^2 + 5p + 3 \quad (12)$$

The environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}` provide an option `wrap-lines`. With this option, the lines of the label are automatically wrapped on the right.<sup>2</sup>

```
\begin{DispWithArrows*}[displaystyle,wrap-lines]
S_n
& = \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} (e^{i\pi/2n})^k \right)
\Arrow{sum of terms of a geometric progression of ratio $e^{i\pi/2n}$} \\
& = \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \frac{1 - (e^{i\pi/2n})^n}{1 - e^{i\pi/2n}} \right)
\Arrow{This line has been wrapped automatically.} \\
& = \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \frac{1 - i}{1 - e^{i\pi/2n}} \right)
\end{DispWithArrows*}
```

$$\begin{aligned} S_n &= \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left( e^{i\frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^k \right) && \text{sum of terms of a geometric} \\ &= \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \frac{1 - \left( e^{i\frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^n}{1 - e^{i\frac{\pi}{2n}}} \right) && \text{progression of ratio } e^{i\frac{\pi}{2n}} \\ &= \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \frac{1 - i}{1 - e^{i\frac{\pi}{2n}}} \right) && \text{This line has been wrapped} \\ & && \text{automatically.} \end{aligned}$$

The option `wrap-lines` doesn't apply to the environments `{WithArrows}` nested in an environment `{DispWithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows*}`. However, it applies to the instructions `\Arrow` and `\MultiArrow` of the `code-after` of the environments `{DispWithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows*}`.

We have said that the environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}` should be used in horizontal mode and not in vertical mode. However, there is an exception. These environments can

be used directly after a `\item` of a LaTeX list. In this case, no vertical space is added before the environment.<sup>20</sup>

Here is an example. The use of `{DispWithArrows}` gives the ability to tag an equation (and also to use `wrap-lines`).

```
\begin{enumerate}
\item
\begin{DispWithArrows}%
[displaystyle, wrap-lines, tagged-lines = last, fleqn, mathindent = 0 pt]
S_n
& = \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left( e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^k \right) \\
\Arrow{we use the formula for a sum of terms of a geometric progression of ratio $e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}$} \\
& = \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \frac{1 - \left( e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^n}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}} \right) \\
\Arrow{$\left( e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^n = e^{i \frac{n\pi}{2}} = i$} \\
& = \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \frac{1 - i}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}} \right)
\end{DispWithArrows}
\end{enumerate}
```

$$\begin{aligned}
1. S_n &= \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left( e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^k \right) && \text{we use the formula for a sum of terms of a geometric} \\
&= \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \frac{1 - \left( e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^n}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}} \right) && \text{progression of ratio } e^{i \frac{2\pi}{n}} \\
&= \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \frac{1 - i}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}} \right) && \left( e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^n = e^{i \frac{n\pi}{2}} = i
\end{aligned} \tag{13}$$

The environment `{DispWithArrows}` is similar to the environment `{align}` of `amsmath`. However, `{DispWithArrows}` is not constructed upon `{align}` (in fact, it's possible to use `witharrows` without `amsmath`).

There are differences between `{DispWithArrows}` and `{align}`.

- The environment `{DispWithArrows}` cannot be inserted in an environment `{gather}` of `amsmath`.
- An environment `{DispWithArrows}` is always unbreakable (even with `\allowdisplaybreaks` of `amsmath`).
- The commands `\label`, `\tag`, `\notag` and `\nonumber` are allowed only in the last column.
- After an `\item` of a LaTeX list, no vertical space is added (this can be changed with the option `standard-behaviour-with-items`).
- **Last but not least, by default, the elements of a `\{DispWithArrows\}` are composed in `textstyle` and not in `displaystyle` (it's possible to change this point with the option `displaystyle`).**

Concerning the references, the package `witharrows` is compatible with the extensions `autonum`, `cleveref`, `fancyref`, `hyperref`, `listlbls`, `prettyref`, `refcheck`, `refstyle`, `showlabels`, `smartref`, `typedref` and `variorref`, and with the options `showonlyrefs` and `showmanualtags` of `mathtools`.<sup>21</sup>

It is not compatible with `showkeys` (not all the labels are shown).

---

<sup>20</sup>It's possible to disable this feature with the option `standard-behaviour-with-items`.

<sup>21</sup>We recall that `variorref`, `hyperref`, `cleveref` and `autonum` must be loaded in this order. The package `witharrows` can be loaded anywhere.

## 9.1 The option <...> of DispWithArrows

The environment `{DispWithArrows}` provides an option `left-brace`. When present, the value of this option is composed on the left, followed by a curly brace (hence the name) and the body of the environment.<sup>22</sup>

For lisibility, this option `left-brace` is also available with a special syntax: it's possible to give this option between angle brackets (< and >) just after `{DispWithArrows}` (before the optional arguments between square brackets).

The following code is an example of multi-case equations.<sup>23</sup>

```
\begin{DispWithArrows}< \binom{n}{p} = >[format = ll,fleqn,displaystyle]
0 & \quad \text{if } p > n
\Arrow{if fact, it's a special case} \\ of the following one \\
\frac{n(n-1)\cdots(n-p+1)}{p!} & \quad \text{if } 0 \leq p \leq n \\
0 & \quad \text{if } p < 0
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

$$\binom{n}{p} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } p > n \\ \frac{n(n-1)\cdots(n-p+1)}{p!} & \text{if } 0 \leq p \leq n \\ 0 & \text{if } p < 0 \end{cases} \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{if fact, it's a special case} \\ \text{of the following one} \end{array} \quad (14)$$

$$(15)$$

$$(16)$$

In the following example, we subnumerate the equations with the option `subequations` (available when the package `amsmath` is loaded).

```
\begin{DispWithArrows}< \label{system} \ref*{system} \Leftrightarrow [
    format = l, subequations ]
x+y+z = -3 \Arrow[tikz=-,jump=2]{3 equations} \\
xy+xz+yz=-2 \\
xyz = -15 \label{last-equation}
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

$$(17) \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x + y + z = -3 \\ xy + xz + yz = -2 \\ xyz = -15 \end{cases} \quad (17a)$$

$$(17b)$$

$$(17c)$$

The whole system is the equation (17) (this reference has been coded by `\ref{system}`) whereas the last equation is the equation (17c) (this reference has been coded by `\ref{last-equation}`). The command `\ref*` used in the code above is a variant of the command `\ref` which does not create interactive link (even when `hyperref` is loaded).

With the option `replace-left-brace-by`, it's possible to replace the left curly brace by another extensible delimiter. For example, “`replace-left-brace-by = [\\enskip]`” will compose with a bracket and add also a `\enskip` after this bracket.

---

<sup>22</sup>The option `left-brace` can also be used without value: in this case, only the brace is drawn...

<sup>23</sup>The environment `{cases}` of `amsmath` is a way to compose such multi-cases equations. However, it's not possible to use the automatic numbering of equations with this environment. The environment `{numcases}` of the extension `cases` (written by Donald Arseneau) provides this possibility but, of course, it's not possible to draw arrows with this extension.

## 10 Advanced features

### 10.1 Use with plain-TeX

The extension `witharrows` can be used with plain-TeX. In this case, the extension must be loaded with `\input`:

```
\input{witharrows}
```

In plain-TeX, there is not environments as in LaTeX. Instead of using the environment `{Witharrows}`, with `\begin{WithArrows}` and `\end{WithArrows}`, one should use a pseudo-environment delimited by `\WithArrows` and `\endWithArrows` (idem for `{DispWithArrows}`).

```
$\WithArrows
A & = (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \\
& = a^2 + 2a + 1
\endWithArrows$
```

The version of `witharrows` for plain-TeX doesn't provide all the functionalities of the LaTeX version. In particular, the functionalities which deal with the number of the equations are not available (since they rely upon the system of tags of LaTeX).

### 10.2 The option `tikz-code` : how to change the shape of the arrows

The option `tikz-code` allows the user to change the shape of the arrows.<sup>24</sup>

For example, the options “up” and “down” described previously (cf. p. 10) are programmed internally with `tikz-code`.

The value of this option must be a valid Tikz drawing instruction (with the final semicolon) with three markers `#1`, `#2` and `#3` for the start point, the end point and the label of the arrow.

By default, the value is the following:

```
\draw (#1) to node {#3} (#2) ;
```

In the following example, we replace this default path by a path with three segments (and the node overwriting the second segment).

```
\begin{WithArrows}[format=c,ygap=5pt,interline=4mm,
tikz-code = {\draw[rounded corners]
(#1) -- ([xshift=5mm]#1)
-- node[circle,
draw,
auto = false,
fill = gray!50,
inner sep = 1pt] {\tiny #3}
([xshift=5mm]#2)
-- (#2) ; }]
3 (2x+4) = 6    \Arrow{$\div 3$} \\
2x+4 = 2        \Arrow{$-4$} \\
2x = -2         \Arrow{$\div 2$} \\
x = -1
\end{WithArrows}
```

---

<sup>24</sup>If the option `wrap-lines` is used in an environment `{DispWithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows*}`, the option `tikz-code` will have no effect for the arrows of this environment but only for the arrows in the nested environments `{WithArrows}`.

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 3(2x + 4) = 6 & \xrightarrow{\quad \div 3 \quad} & \\
 2x + 4 = 2 & \xleftarrow{\quad -4 \quad} & \\
 2x = -2 & \xleftarrow{\quad \div 2 \quad} & \\
 x = -1 & \xleftarrow{\quad} &
 \end{array}$$

The environments `{DispWithArrows}` and its starred version `{DispWithArrows*}` provide a command `\WithArrowsRightX` which can be used in a definition of tikz-code. This command gives the  $x$ -value of the right side of the composition box (taking into account the eventual tags of the equations). For an example of use, see p. 30.

### 10.3 The command \WithArrowsNewStyle

The extension `witharrows` provides a command `\WithArrowsNewStyle` to define styles in a way similar to the “styles” of Tikz.

The command `\WithArrowsNewStyle` takes two mandatory arguments. The first is the name of the style and the second is a list of key-value pairs. The scope of the definition done by `\WithArrowsNewStyle` is the current TeX scope.<sup>25</sup>

The style can be used as a key at the document level (with `\WithArrowsOptions`) or at the environment level (in the optional arguments of `\WithArrows` and `\DispWithArrows`). The style can also be used in another command `\WithArrowsNewStyle`.

For an example of use, see p. 30.

At this time, there is no style for individual arrows. However, it's, of course, possible to define new commands based upon the command \Arrow. For example :

```
\newcommand{\ThickArrow}{\Arrow[tikz=thick]}
```

This new command `\ThickArrow` still accepts options between square brackets. It's possible to write `\ThickArrow[jump=2]` because, in fact, `\Arrow[tikz=thick][jump=2]` is an allowed syntax for the command `\Arrow` (it's possible to put an arbitrary number of optional arguments between square brackets after `\Arrow`).

## 10.4 The key right-overlap

New 2.8

The key `right-overlap` is a boolean key whose initial value is `true`. It deals with the environments `{WithArrows}` only.

When the key `right-overlap` is in force, the arrows (and their labels) are drawn in an overlapping position and are not relevant for the computation of the dimensions of the TeX box containing the environment `{WithArrows}`.

When the key `right-overlap` is set to `false` (with `\WithArrowsOptions` or whithin an individual environment `{WithArrows}`), the overlapping on the right is taken into account in the dimensions of the encompassing box.

```

\$\\left\\{\\begin{WithArrows}[c,format = rCrCl,right-overlap=false]
2x & + & 3y & = & 5 \\Arrow{we add $L_1$ to $L_2$}\\\
-2x & - & 5y & = & 2
\\end{WithArrows}\\right.\\$\\quad
\$\\left\\{\\begin{WithArrows}[c,format = rCrCl]

```

---

<sup>25</sup>We recall that, in particular, every LaTeX environment is a TeX group.

```
2x & + & 3y & = & 5 \\
& - & 2y & = & 7
\end{WithArrows}\right. $
```

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} 2x + 3y = 5 \\ -2x - 5y = 2 \end{array} \right) \text{we add } L_1 \text{ to } L_2 \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} 2x + 3y = 5 \\ -2y = 7 \end{array} \right.$$

The tuning `right-overlap = false` may also be useful in conjunction with the class `standalone`.

## 10.5 Vertical positioning of the arrows

There are four parameters for fine tuning of the vertical positioning of the arrows : `ygap`, `ystart`, `start-adjust` and `end-adjust`.

We first explain the behaviour when the parameters `start-adjust` and `end-adjust` are equal to zero:

- the option `ystart` sets the vertical distance between the base line of the text and the start of the arrow (initial value: 0.4 ex);
- the option `ygap` sets the vertical distance between two consecutive arrows (initial value: 0.4 ex).

$$\begin{aligned} (\cos x + \sin x)^2 &= \cos^2 x + 2 \cos x \sin x + \sin^2 x \xrightarrow{\text{ystart}} \\ &= \cos^2 x + \sin^2 x + 2 \sin x \cos x \xrightarrow{\text{ygap}} \\ &= 1 + \sin(2x) \end{aligned}$$

However, for aesthetic reasons, when it's possible, `witharrows` starts the arrow a bit higher (by an amount `start-adjust`) and ends the arrow a bit lower (by an amount `end-adjust`). By default, both parameters `start-adjust` and `end-adjust` are equal to 0.4 ex.

Here is for example the behaviour without the mechanism of `start-adjust` and `end-adjust`:

```
$\begin{WithArrows} [start-adjust=0pt, end-adjust=0pt]
A &= (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \\
&= a^2 + 2a + 1
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (a + 1)^2 \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \xrightarrow{\text{we expand}} \end{aligned}$$

Here is the standard behaviour since version 1.13 (the parameters `start-adjust` and `end-adjust` are used with the initial value 0.4 ex). The arrow is longer and the result is more aesthetic.

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (a + 1)^2 \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \xrightarrow{\text{we expand}} \end{aligned}$$

It's also possible to use the option `adjust` which sets both `start-adjust` and `end-adjust`.

Since the version 2.1 of `witharrows`, an arrow of `jump` equal to 1 has a maximal length<sup>26</sup> equal to the parameter `max-length-of-arrow`. The initial value of this parameter is 2 cm.

In the following example, the value of `max-length-of-arrow` has been fixed to 1.5 cm.

---

<sup>26</sup>We call *length* of an arrow the difference between the *y*-value of its start point and the *y* value of its end point.

```
\[\begin{WithArrows} [max-length-of-arrow = 1.5cm]
A
& =
\begin{vmatrix}
1 & a & a^2 & a^3 & a^4 \\
1 & b & b^2 & b^3 & b^4 \\
1 & c & c^2 & c^3 & c^4 \\
1 & d & d^2 & d^3 & d^4 \\
1 & e & e^2 & e^3 & e^4
\end{vmatrix}
\end{WithArrows}
\begin{vmatrix}
\$L_2 \gets L_2-L_1 \\
\$L_3 \gets L_3-L_1 \\
\$L_4 \gets L_4-L_1 \\
\$L_5 \gets L_5-L_1 \% don't put \\ here
\end{vmatrix}
\begin{vmatrix}
1 & a & a^2 & a^3 & a^4 \\
0 & b-a & b^2-a^2 & b^3-a^3 & b^4-a^4 \\
0 & c-a & c^2-a^2 & c^3-a^3 & c^4-a^4 \\
0 & d-a & d^2-a^2 & d^3-a^3 & d^4-a^4 \\
0 & e-a & e^2-a^2 & e^3-a^3 & e^4-a^4
\end{vmatrix}
\end{WithArrows}\]
```

$$A = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & a & a^2 & a^3 & a^4 \\ 1 & b & b^2 & b^3 & b^4 \\ 1 & c & c^2 & c^3 & c^4 \\ 1 & d & d^2 & d^3 & d^4 \\ 1 & e & e^2 & e^3 & e^4 \end{vmatrix} \quad \begin{array}{l} L_2 \leftarrow L_2 - L_1 \\ L_3 \leftarrow L_3 - L_1 \\ L_4 \leftarrow L_4 - L_1 \\ L_5 \leftarrow L_5 - L_1 \end{array}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} 1 & a & a^2 & a^3 & a^4 \\ 0 & b-a & b^2-a^2 & b^3-a^3 & b^4-a^4 \\ 0 & c-a & c^2-a^2 & c^3-a^3 & c^4-a^4 \\ 0 & d-a & d^2-a^2 & d^3-a^3 & d^4-a^4 \\ 0 & e-a & e^2-a^2 & e^3-a^3 & e^4-a^4 \end{vmatrix}$$

## 10.6 Footnotes in the environments of witharrows

If you want to put footnotes in an environment `{WithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows}`, you can use a pair `\footnotemark`–`\footnotetext`.

It's also possible to extract the footnotes with the help of the package `footnote` or the package `footnotehyper`.

If `witharrows` is loaded with the option `footnote` (with `\usepackage[footnote]{witharrows}` or with `\PassOptionsToPackage`), the package `footnote` is loaded (if it is not yet loaded) and it is used to extract the footnotes.

If `witharrows` is loaded with the option `footnotehyper`, the package `footnotehyper` is loaded (if it is not yet loaded) and it is used to extract footnotes.

Caution: The packages `footnote` and `footnotehyper` are incompatible. The package `footnotehyper` is the successor of the package `footnote` and should be used preferably. The package `footnote` has some drawbacks, in particular: it must be loaded after the package `xcolor` and it is not perfectly compatible with `hyperref`.

In this document, the package `witharrows` has been loaded with the option `footnotehyper` and we give an example with a footnote in the label of an arrow:

$$A = (a + b)^2 \\ = a^2 + b^2 + 2ab \quad \text{We expand}\footnote{A footnote.}^{27}$$

## 10.7 Option no-arrows

The option `no-arrows` is a convenience given to the user. With this option the arrows are not drawn. However, an analyse of the arrows is done and some errors can be raised, for example if an arrow would arrive after the last row of the environment.

## 10.8 Note for the users of AUCTeX

In a editor of text with a LaTeX-oriented mode, the environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}` should be formated like the environment `equation` of LaTeX, that is to say with a formating adapted to the math mode of TeX.

In Emacs with the AUCTeX mode, it's possible to achieve such a customization by adding the strings "`"DispWithArrows"`" and "`"DispWithArrows*"`" to the variable `font-latex-math-environments`. It's possible to do that with the "easy customization" interface of Emacs:

`M-x customize > [Text] > [TeX] > [Font LaTeX]`

## 10.9 Note for developpers

If you want to construct an environment upon an environment of `witharrows`, we recommand to call the environment with the construction `\WithArrows-\endWithArrows` or `\DispWithArrows-\endDispWithArrows` (and not `\begin{WithArrows}-\end{WithArrows}`, etc.).

By doing so, the error messages generated by `witharrows` will (usually) mention the name of your environment and they will be easier to understand by the final user.

By example, you can define an environment `{DWA}` which is an alias of `{DispWithArrows}`:  
`\NewDocumentEnvironment {DWA} {} {\DispWithArrows}{\endDispWithArrows}`

If you use this environment `{DWA}` in math mode, you will have the following error message:  
The environment `{DWA}` should be used only outside math mode.

Another example is the definition of the environment `{DispWithArrows*}` internally in the package `witharrows` by the following code:

```
\NewDocumentEnvironment {DispWithArrows*} {}
  {\WithArrowsOptions{notag}%
   \DispWithArrows}
  {\endDispWithArrows}
```

# 11 Examples

## 11.1 \MoveEqLeft

It's possible to use `\MoveEqLeft` of `mathtools`. Don't forget that `\MoveEqLeft` has also the value of an ampersand (`&`). That's important for the placement of an eventual command `\Arrow`.

---

<sup>27</sup>A footnote.

```

$ \begin{WithArrows} [interline=0.5ex]
\MoveEqLeft \arccos(x) = \arcsin \frac{4}{5} + \arcsin \frac{5}{13}
\Arrow{because both are in $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$} \\
& \Leftrightarrow x = \sin(\arcsin \frac{4}{5} + \arcsin \frac{5}{13}) \\
& \Leftrightarrow x = \frac{4}{5} \cos \arcsin \frac{5}{13} + \frac{5}{13} \cos \arcsin \frac{4}{5} \\
\Arrow{$\forall x \in [-1, 1], \cos(\arcsin x) = \sqrt{1-x^2}$} \\
& \Leftrightarrow x = \frac{4}{5} \sqrt{1 - (\frac{5}{13})^2} + \frac{5}{13} \sqrt{1 - (\frac{4}{5})^2} \\
\end{WithArrows}$

```

$$\begin{aligned}
\arccos(x) &= \arcsin \frac{4}{5} + \arcsin \frac{5}{13} && \left. \right\downarrow \text{because both are in } [-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}] \\
\Leftrightarrow x &= \sin \left( \arcsin \frac{4}{5} + \arcsin \frac{5}{13} \right) \\
\Leftrightarrow x &= \frac{4}{5} \cos \arcsin \frac{5}{13} + \frac{5}{13} \cos \arcsin \frac{4}{5} && \left. \right\downarrow \forall x \in [-1, 1], \cos(\arcsin x) = \sqrt{1-x^2} \\
\Leftrightarrow x &= \frac{4}{5} \sqrt{1 - \left( \frac{5}{13} \right)^2} + \frac{5}{13} \sqrt{1 - \left( \frac{4}{5} \right)^2}
\end{aligned}$$

## 11.2 A command \DoubleArrow

By using the key `o` (cf. p. 9) available at the local level, it's easy to write a command `\DoubleArrow` for two arrows going in opposite directions.

```

\NewDocumentCommand \DoubleArrow { O {} m m }
{
    \Arrow[tikz=>,#1]{#2}%
    \Arrow[o,tikz=<-,#1]{#3}
}

```

Example of use:

```

$ \begin{WithArrows} [groups]
A &= (a+b)^2 \DoubleArrow[tikz={font=\bfseries}]{expansion} \\
&= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 \Downarrow \text{expansion} \Updownarrow \text{factorization}
\end{WithArrows}$

```

$$\begin{aligned}
A &= (a+b)^2 && \left. \right\downarrow \text{expansion} \quad \left. \right\uparrow \text{factorization} \\
&= a^2 + 2ab + b^2
\end{aligned}$$

## 11.3 Modifying the shape of the nodes

It's possible to change the shape of the labels, which are Tikz nodes, by modifying the key “`every node`” of Tikz.

```

\begin{WithArrows}%
[format = c,
 interline = 4mm,
 tikz = {every node/.style = {circle,
                                draw,
                                auto = false,
                                fill = gray!50,
                                inner sep = 1pt,
                                font = \tiny}}]
3 (2x+4) = 6 \Arrow{$\div 3$} \\
2x+4 = 2 \Arrow{$-4$} \\
2x = -2 \Arrow{$\div 2$} \\
2x = -1
\end{WithArrows}

```

$$\begin{array}{l}
 3(2x + 4) = 6 \\
 2x + 4 = 2 \\
 2x = -2 \\
 2x = -1
 \end{array}
 \quad
 \begin{array}{c}
 \text{\scriptsize $\div 3$} \\
 \text{\scriptsize $-$} \\
 \text{\scriptsize $\div 2$}
 \end{array}$$

## 11.4 Examples with the option tikz-code

We recall that the option `tikz-code` is the Tikz code used by `witharrows` to draw the arrows.<sup>28</sup>

The value by default of `tikz-code` is `\draw (#1) to node {#3} (#2)` ; where the three markers `#1`, `#2` and `#3` represent the start row, the end row and the label of the arrow.

### 11.4.1 Example 1

In the following example, we define the value of `tikz-code` with two instructions `\path` : the first instruction draws the arrow itself and the second puts the label in a Tikz node in the rectangle delimited by the arrow.

```

\begin{DispWithArrows*}%
  [displaystyle,
  ygap = 2mm,
  ystart = 0mm,
  tikz-code = {\draw (#1) -- ++(4.5cm,0) |- (#2) ;
    \path (#1) -- (#2)
      node[text width = 4.2cm, right, midway] {#3} ;}]
  S_n
  &= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} \cdot \frac{k}{n}\right)
  \dots

```

$$\begin{aligned}
 S_n &= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} \cdot \frac{k}{n}\right) && \cos x = \Re(e^{ix}) \\
 &= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \Re\left(e^{i\frac{k\pi}{2n}}\right) && \Re(z + z') = \Re(z) + \Re(z') \\
 &= \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} e^{i\frac{k\pi}{2n}}\right) && \exp \text{ is a morphism for } \times \text{ and} \\
 &= \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left(e^{i\frac{\pi}{2n}}\right)^k\right) && + \\
 &= \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\frac{1 - \left(e^{i\frac{\pi}{2n}}\right)^n}{1 - e^{i\frac{\pi}{2n}}}\right) && \text{sum of terms of a geometric} \\
 &= \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\frac{1 - i}{1 - e^{i\frac{\pi}{2n}}}\right) && \text{progression of ratio } e^{i\frac{2\pi}{n}}
 \end{aligned}$$

---

<sup>28</sup>If an environment `{DispWithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows*}` is used with the option `wrap-lines`, the value of the option `tikz-code` is not used for this environment (but is used for the environments nested inside).

### 11.4.2 Example 2

It's possible to modify the previous example to have the “`text width`” automatically computed with the right margin (in a way similar as the `wrap-lines` option) in the environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}`. In the definition of `tikz-code`, we use the command `\WithArrowsRightX` which is the  $x$ -value of the right margin of the current composition box (it's a TeX command and not a dimension). For lisibility, we use a style. This example requires the Tikz library `calc`.

```
\WithArrowsNewStyle{MyStyle}
{displaystyle,
ygap = 2mm,
xoffset = Opt,
ystart = 0mm,
tikz-code = {\path let \p1 = (##1)
in (##1)
-- node [anchor = west,
text width = {\WithArrowsRightX - \x1 - 0.5 em}]
{##3}
(##2) ;
\draw let \p1 = (##1)
in (##1) -- ++(\WithArrowsRightX - \x1,0) |- (##2) ; }}

begin{DispWithArrows}[MyStyle]
S_n
& = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} \cdot \frac{k}{n}\right) \\
& = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \Re\left(e^{i \frac{k\pi}{2n}}\right) \\
& = \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} e^{i \frac{k\pi}{2n}}\right) \\
& = \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left(e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}\right)^k\right) \\
& = \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\frac{1 - \left(e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}\right)^n}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}}\right) \\
.....
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

$$S_n = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} \cdot \frac{k}{n}\right) \quad (18)$$

$$= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \Re\left(e^{i \frac{k\pi}{2n}}\right) \quad \begin{array}{l} \cos x = \Re(e^{ix}) \\ \Re(z + z') = \Re(z) + \Re(z') \end{array} \quad (19)$$

$$= \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} e^{i \frac{k\pi}{2n}}\right) \quad \begin{array}{l} \Re(z + z') = \Re(z) + \Re(z') \\ \exp \text{ is a morphism for } \times \text{ and } + \end{array} \quad (20)$$

$$= \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left(e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}\right)^k\right) \quad \begin{array}{l} \exp \text{ is a morphism for } \times \text{ and } + \\ \text{sum of terms of a geometric} \end{array} \quad (21)$$

$$= \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\frac{1 - \left(e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}\right)^n}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}}\right) \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{sum of terms of a geometric} \\ \text{progression of ratio } e^{i \frac{2\pi}{n}} \end{array} \quad (22)$$

$$= \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\frac{1 - i}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}}\right) \quad (23)$$

### 11.4.3 Example 3

In the following example, we change the shape of the arrow depending on whether the start row is longer than the end row or not. This example requires the Tikz library `calc`.

```
\begin{WithArrows}[11, interline=5mm, xoffset=5mm,
tikz-code = {\draw[rounded corners,
every node/.style = {circle,
draw,
auto = false,
```

```

inner sep = 1pt,
fill = gray!50,
font = \tiny ]}

let \p1 = (#1),
    \p2 = (#2)
in \ifdim \x1 > \x2
    (\p1) -- node {#3} (\x1,\y2) -- (\p2)
\else
    (\p1) -- (\x2,\y1) -- node {#3} (\p2)
\fi ;}

E & \Longleftarrow \frac{(x+4)}{3} + \frac{5x+3}{5} = 7
\Arrow{$\times 15$} \\
& \Longleftarrow 5(x+4) + 3(5x+3) = 105 \\
& \Longleftarrow 5x+20 + 15x+9 = 105 \\
& \Longleftarrow 20x+29 = 105
\Arrow{$-29$} \\
& \Longleftarrow 20x = 76
\Arrow{$\div 20$} \\
& \Longleftarrow x = \frac{38}{10}
\end{WithArrows}

```

$$\begin{aligned}
E &\iff \frac{(x+4)}{3} + \frac{5x+3}{5} = 7 && \text{---} \\
&\iff 5(x+4) + 3(5x+3) = 105 && \downarrow \text{---} \\
&\iff 5x + 20 + 15x + 9 = 105 \\
&\iff 20x + 29 = 105 && \downarrow \text{---} \\
&\iff 20x = 76 && \leftarrow \text{---} \\
&\iff x = \frac{38}{10} && \leftarrow \text{---}
\end{aligned}$$

## 11.5 Automatic numbered loop

Assume we want to draw a loop of numbered arrows. In this purpose, it's possible to write a dedicated command `\NumberedLoop` which will do the job when used in `code-after`. In the following example, we write this command with `\NewDocumentCommand` (of L3) and `\foreach` of pgffor (which is loaded when `witharrows` is loaded).

```

\NewDocumentCommand \NumberedLoop {}
{\foreach \j in {2,...,\WithArrowsNbLines}
 { \pgfmathtruncatemacro{\i}{\j-1}
   \Arrow[rr]{\i}{\j}{\i}
   \Arrow[rr,xoffset=1cm,tikz=-]{1}{\WithArrowsNbLines}{\WithArrowsNbLines}}

```

The command `\WithArrowsNbLines` is a command available in `code-after` which gives the total number of lines (=rows) of the current environment (it's a command and not a counter).

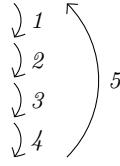
```

$ \begin{WithArrows} [code-after = \NumberedLoop]
a.\;& f \text{ est continuo} n \} E \\
b.\;& f \text{ est continuo} n \} O \\
c.\;& f \text{ is bounded on the unit sphere} \\
d.\;& \exists K > 0 \quad \forall x \in E \quad |f(x)| \leq K |x| \\

```

```
e.\; & f \text{ is lipschitzian}
\end{WithArrows}$
```

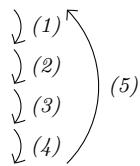
- a.  $f$  est continuous on  $E$
- b.  $f$  est continuous in 0
- c.  $f$  is bounded on the unit sphere
- d.  $\exists K > 0 \quad \forall x \in E \quad \|f(x)\| \leq K\|x\|$
- e.  $f$  is lipschitzian



As usual, it's possible to change the characteristic of both arrows and nodes with the option `tikz`. However, if we want to change the style to have, for example, numbers in round brackets, the best way is to change the value of `tikz-code`:

```
tikz-code = {\draw (#1) to node [\footnotesize (#3)] (#2) ;}
```

- a.  $f$  est continuous on  $E$
- b.  $f$  est continuous in 0
- c.  $f$  is bounded on the unit sphere
- d.  $\exists K > 0 \quad \forall x \in E \quad \|f(x)\| \leq K\|x\|$
- e.  $f$  is lipschitzian



## 12 Implementation

### 12.1 Declaration of the package and extensions loaded

The prefix `witharrows` has been registered for this extension.

See: [<@=@=witharrows>](http://mirrors.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/l3kernel/l3prefixes.pdf)

First, `tikz` and some Tikz libraries are loaded before the `\ProvidesExplPackage`. They are loaded this way because `\usetikzlibrary` in L3 code fails.<sup>29</sup>

```
1 (*LaTeX)
2 \RequirePackage{tikz}
3 
```

Then, we can give the traditional declaration of a package written with L3:

```
10 (*LaTeX)
11 \RequirePackage{l3keys2e}
12 \ProvidesExplPackage
13   {witharrows}
14   {\myfiledate}
15   {\myfileversion}
16   {Draws arrows for explanations on the right}
```

---

<sup>29</sup>cf. [tex.stackexchange.com/questions/57424/using-of-usetikzlibrary-in-an-exp13-package-fails](https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/57424/using-of-usetikzlibrary-in-an-exp13-package-fails)

```

17 \RequirePackage { varwidth }
18 {/LaTeX}
19 {*plain-TeX}
20 \ExplSyntaxOn
21 \catcode `@ = 11
22 {/plain-TeX}

```

## 12.2 The packages footnote and footnotehyper

A few options can be given to the package `witharrows` when it is loaded (with `\usepackage`, `\RequirePackage` or `\PassOptionsToPackage`). Currently (version 2.8b), there are two such options: `footnote` and `footnotehyper`. With the option `footnote`, `witharrows` loads `footnote` and uses it to extract the footnotes from the environments `{WithArrows}`. Idem for the option `footnotehyper`.

The boolean `\c_@@_footnotehyper_bool` will indicate if the option `footnotehyper` is used.

```

23 {*LaTeX}
24 \bool_new:N \c_@@_footnotehyper_bool

```

The boolean `\c_@@_footnote_bool` will indicate if the option `footnote` is used, but quickly, it will also be set to `true` if the option `footnotehyper` is used.

```

25 \bool_new:N \c_@@_footnote_bool
26 {/LaTeX}

```

```

27 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_msg_new:nn { \msg_new:nnn { witharrows } }
28 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_msg_new:nnn #1 #2 #3
29 {
30   \bool_if:NTF \c_@@_messages_for_Overleaf_bool
31   { \msg_new:nnn { witharrows } { #1 } { #2 \\ #3 } }
32   { \msg_new:nnnn { witharrows } { #1 } { #2 } { #3 } }
33 }
34 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_msg_redirect_name:nn
35 { \msg_redirect_name:nnn { witharrows } }
36 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_error:n { \msg_error:nn { witharrows } }
37 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_warning:n { \msg_warning:nn { witharrows } }
38 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_fatal:n { \msg_fatal:nn { witharrows } }
39 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_error:nn { \msg_error:nnn { witharrows } }
40 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_error:nn { n x }

```

We also create a command which will genereate usually an error but only a warning on Overleaf. The argument is given by currification.

```

41 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_error_or_warning:n
42 { \bool_if:NTF \c_@@_messages_for_Overleaf_bool \@@_warning:n \@@_error:n }

```

We try to detect whether the compilation is done on Overleaf. We use `\c_sys_jobname_str` because, with Overleaf, the value of `\c_sys_jobname_str` is always “output”.

```

43 \bool_set:Nn \c_@@_messages_for_Overleaf_bool
44 {
45   \str_if_eq_p:Vn \c_sys_jobname_str { _region_ } % for Emacs
46   || \str_if_eq_p:Vn \c_sys_jobname_str { output } % for Overleaf
47 }

```

We define a set of keys `WithArrows/package` for these options.

```

48 {*LaTeX}
49 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / package }
50 {
51   footnote .bool_set:N = \c_@@_footnote_bool ,
52   footnotehyper .bool_set:N = \c_@@_footnotehyper_bool ,
53   unknown .code:n =
54     \@@_fatal:n { Option~unknown~for~package }
55 }

```

```

56 \@@_msg_new:nn { Option-unknown-for-package }
57 {
58   You~can't~use~the~option~'\l_keys_key_str'~when~loading~the~
59   package~witharrows.~Try~to~use~the~command~
60   \token_to_str:N\WithArrowsOptions.
61 }

We process the options when the package is loaded (with \usepackage).
62 \ProcessKeysOptions { WithArrows / package }

63 \@@_msg_new:nn { footnote-with-footnotehyper-package }
64 {
65   Footnote-forbidden.\\
66   You~can't~use~the~option~'footnote'~because~the~package~
67   footnotehyper~has~already~been~loaded.~
68   If~you~want,~you~can~use~the~option~'footnotehyper'~and~the~footnotes~
69   within~the~environments~of~witharrows~will~be~extracted~with~the~tools~
70   of~the~package~footnotehyper.\\
71   If~you~go~on,~the~package~footnotehyper~won't~be~loaded.
72 }

73 \@@_msg_new:nn { footnotehyper-with-footnote-package }
74 {
75   You~can't~use~the~option~'footnotehyper'~because~the~package~
76   footnote-has~already~been~loaded.~
77   If~you~want,~you~can~use~the~option~'footnote'~and~the~footnotes~
78   within~the~environments~of~witharrows~will~be~extracted~with~the~tools~
79   of~the~package~footnote.\\
80   If~you~go~on,~the~package~footnotehyper~won't~be~loaded.
81 }

82 \bool_if:NT \c_@@_footnote_bool
83 {

```

The class beamer has its own system to extract footnotes and that's why we have nothing to do if beamer is used.

```

84 \ifclassloaded { beamer }
85   { \bool_set_false:N \c_@@_footnote_bool }
86   {
87     \ifpackageloaded { footnotehyper }
88       { \@@_error:n { footnote-with-footnotehyper-package } }
89       { \usepackage { footnote } }
90   }
91 }

92 \bool_if:NT \c_@@_footnotehyper_bool
93 {

```

The class beamer has its own system to extract footnotes and that's why we have nothing to do if beamer is used.

```

94 \ifclassloaded { beamer }
95   { \bool_set_false:N \c_@@_footnote_bool }
96   {
97     \ifpackageloaded { footnote }
98       { \@@_error:n { footnotehyper-with-footnote-package } }
99       { \usepackage { footnotehyper } }
100      \bool_set_true:N \c_@@_footnote_bool
101   }
102 }
```

The flag \c\_@@\_footnote\_bool is raised and so, we will only have to test \c\_@@\_footnote\_bool in order to know if we have to insert an environment \begin{savenotes} (the \begin{savenotes} is in \@@\_pre\_halign:n and \end{savenotes} at the end of the environments \WithArrows and \DispWithArrows).

### 12.3 The class option leqno

The boolean `\c_@@_leqno_bool` will indicate if the class option `leqno` is used. When this option is used in LaTeX, the command `\eqnnum` is redefined (as one can see in the file `leqno.clo`). That's enough to put the labels on the left in our environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}`. However, that's not enough when our option `wrap-lines` is used. That's why we have to know if this option is used as a class option. With the following programmation, `leqno` *can't* be given as an option of `witharrows` (by design).

```

103 \bool_new:N \c_@@_leqno_bool
104 \DeclareOption { leqno } { \bool_set_true:N \c_@@_leqno_bool }
105 \DeclareOption* { }
106 \ProcessOptions*
107 
```

### 12.4 Collecting options

The following technic allows to create user commands with the ability to put an arbitrary number of `[list of (key=val)]` after the name of the command.

*Exemple :*

```
\@@_collect_options:n { \F } [x=a,y=b] [z=c,t=d] { arg }
```

will be transformed in : `\F{x=a,y=b,z=c,t=d}{arg}`

Therefore, by writing : `\def\G{\@@_collect_options:n{\F}}`,  
the command `\G` takes in an arbitrary number of optional arguments between square brackets.

```

108 (*LaTeX)
109 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_collect_options:n #1
110 {
111     \peek_meaning:NTF [
112         { \@@_collect_options:nw { #1 } }
113         { #1 { } }
114     }

```

We use `\NewDocumentCommand` in order to be able to allow nested brackets within the argument between `[` and `]`.

```

115 \NewDocumentCommand \@@_collect_options:nw { m r[] }
116     { \@@_collect_options:nn { #1 } { #2 } }
117
118 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_collect_options:nn #1 #2
119 {
120     \peek_meaning:NTF [
121         { \@@_collect_options:nnw { #1 } { #2 } }
122         { #1 { #2 } }
123     }
124
125 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_collect_options:nnw #1#2[#3]
126     { \@@_collect_options:nn { #1 } { #2 , #3 } }
127 
```

### 12.5 Some technical definitions

```

128 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_set_split:Nnn { N x x }

```

We define a command `\@@_sort_seq:N` which will sort a sequence.

```

129 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_sort_seq:N #1
130 {
131     \seq_sort:Nn #1
132     {

```

```

133     \str_compare:eNeTF
134     { \str_lowercase:n { ##1 } } < { \str_lowercase:n { ##2 } }
135     \sort_return_same:
136     \sort_return_swapped:
137   }
138 }
```

The following command creates a sequence of strings (`str`) from a `clist`.

```

139 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_set_seq_of_str_from_clist:Nn #1 #2
140 {
141   \seq_set_from_clist:Nn #1 { #2 }
142   \seq_set_map_x:NNn #1 #1 { \tl_to_str:n { ##1 } }
143 }
```

The command `\@@_save:N` saves a L3 variable by creating a global version of the variable. For a variable named `\l_name_type`, the corresponding global variable will be named `\g_name_type`. The type of the variable is determinated by the suffix `type` and is used to apply the corresponding L3 commands.

```

144 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_save:N #1
145 {
146   \seq_set_split:Nxx \l_tmpa_seq
147   { \char_generate:nn { `_ } { 12 } }
148   { \cs_to_str:N #1 }
149   \seq_pop_left:NN \l_tmpa_seq \l_tmpa_t1
```

The string `\l_tmpa_str` will contains the `type` of the variable.

```

150 \str_set:Nx \l_tmpa_str { \seq_item:Nn \l_tmpa_seq { -1 } }
151 \use:c { \l_tmpa_str _if_exist:cF }
152 { g _\seq_use:Nnnn \l_tmpa_seq _ _ _ }
153 {
154   \use:c { \l_tmpa_str _new:c }
155   { g _\seq_use:Nnnn \l_tmpa_seq _ _ _ }
156 }
157 \use:c { \l_tmpa_str _gset_eq:cN }
158 { g _\seq_use:Nnnn \l_tmpa_seq _ _ _ } #1
159 }
```

The command `\@@_restore:N` affects to the L3 variable the value of the (previously) set value of the corresponding `global` variable.

```

160 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_restore:N #1
161 {
162   \seq_set_split:Nxx \l_tmpa_seq
163   { \char_generate:nn { `_ } { 12 } }
164   { \cs_to_str:N #1 }
165   \seq_pop_left:NN \l_tmpa_seq \l_tmpa_t1
166   \str_set:Nx \l_tmpa_str { \seq_item:Nn \l_tmpa_seq { -1 } }
167   \use:c { \l_tmpa_str _set_eq:Nc }
168   #1 { g _\seq_use:Nnnn \l_tmpa_seq _ _ _ }
169 }
```

We define a Tikz style `@@_node_style` for the `l`-nodes and `r`-nodes that will be created in the `\halign`. These nodes are Tikz nodes of shape “rectangle” but with zero width. An arrow between two nodes starts from the `south` anchor of the first node and arrives at the `north` anchor of the second node.

```

170 \tikzset
171 {
172   @@_node_style / .style =
173   {
174     above = \l_@@_ystart_dim ,
175     inner_sep = \c_zero_dim ,
176     minimum~width = \c_zero_dim ,
177     minimum~height = \l_@@_ygap_dim
178   }
```

```
179 }
```

If the user uses the option `show-nodes` (it's a `l3keys` option), the Tikz options `draw` and `red` will be appended to this style. This feature may be useful for debugging.<sup>30</sup>

The style `@@_standard` is loaded in standard in the `{tikzpicture}` we need. The names of the nodes are prefixed by `wa` (by security) but also by a prefix which is the position-in-the-tree of the nested environments.

```
180 \tikzset
181 {
182   @@_standard / .style =
183   {
184     remember picture ,
185     overlay ,
186     name-prefix = wa - \l_@@_prefix_str -
187   } ,
188   @@_standard_arrow / .style =
189   {
190     @@_standard ,
191     every path / .style = WithArrows / arrow
192   }
193 }
```

The following line is a security when using `xelatex` and RTL language (cf. question 683570 on TeX StackExchange).

```
194 \sys_if_engine_xetex:T
195 {
196   \tikzset
197   {
198     @@_standard_arrow / .append-style =
199     { every node / .append-style = { text = . } }
200   }
201 }
```

We also define a style for the tips of arrow. The final user of the extension `witharrows` will use this style if he wants to draw an arrow directly with a Tikz command in his document (probably using the Tikz nodes created by `{WithArrows}` in the `\halign`). This style is documented in the documentation of `witharrows`.

```
202 \tikzset
203 {
204   WithArrows / arrow / tips / .style =
205   { > = { Straight-Barb [ scale = 1.2 , bend ] } }
206 }
```

The style `WithArrows/arrow` will be used to draw the arrows (more precisely, it will be passed to `every-path`). This style is documented in the documentation of `witharrows`.

```
207 \tikzset
208 {
209   WithArrows / arrow / .style =
210   {
211     align = flush-left ,
```

Before the version 2.7, it was `align = left`.

```
212   auto = left ,
213   {*LaTeX}
214   font = \small \itshape ,
215   /{LaTeX}
216   WithArrows / arrow / tips ,
217   bend-left = 45 ,
218   ->
```

---

<sup>30</sup>The v-nodes, created near the end of line in `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}` are not shown with the option `show-nodes`.

```

219     }
220 }
```

The option `subequations` is an option which uses the environment `{subequations}` of `amsmath`. That's why, if `amsmath` is loaded, we add the key `subequations` to the list of the keys available in `\WithArrowsOptions` and `{DispWithArrows}`.

```

221 (*LaTeX)
222 \AtBeginDocument
223 {
224   \IfPackageLoadedTF { amsmath }
225   {
226     \seq_put_right:Nn \l_@@_options_WithArrowsOptions_seq { subequations }
227     \seq_put_right:Nn \l_@@_options_DispatchWithArrows_seq { subequations }
228   }
}
```

In order to increase the interline in the environments `{WithArrows}`, `{DispWithArrows}`, etc., we will use the command `\spread@equation` of `amsmath`. When used, this command becomes no-op (in the current TeX group). Therefore, it will be possible to use the environments of `amsmath` (e.g. `{aligned}`) in an environment `{WithArrows}`.

Nevertheless, we want the extension `witharrows` available without `amsmath`. That's why we give a definition of `\spread@equation` if `amsmath` is not loaded.

```

229   {
230 
```

{/LaTeX}

```

231   \cs_new_protected:Npn \spread@equation
232   {
233     \openup \jot
234     \cs_set_eq:NN \spread@equation \prg_do_nothing:
235   }
236 
```

{\*LaTeX}

```

237   }
238 }
```

{/LaTeX}

```

240 \tl_new:N \l_@@_left_brace_tl
241 \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_left_brace_tl \c_novalue_tl
```

## 12.6 Variables

The boolean `\l_@@_in_WithArrows_bool` will be raised in an environment `{WithArrows}` and the boolean `\l_@@_in_DispatchWithArrows_bool` will be raised in an environment `{DispWithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows*}`. The boolean `\l_@@_in_code_after_bool` will be raised during the execution of the `code-after` (option `code-after`).

```

242 \bool_new:N \l_@@_in_WithArrows_bool
243 \bool_new:N \l_@@_in_DispatchWithArrows_bool
244 \bool_new:N \l_@@_in_code_after_bool
```

The following sequence is the position of the last environment `{WithArrows}` in the tree of the nested environments `{WithArrows}`.

```

245 \seq_new:N \g_@@_position_in_the_tree_seq
246 \seq_gput_right:Nn \g_@@_position_in_the_tree_seq 1
```

The following counter will give the number of the last environment `{WithArrows}` of level 0. This counter will be used only in the definition of `\WithArrowsLastEnv`.

```
247 \int_new:N \g_@@_last_env_int
```

The following integer indicates the position of the box that will be created for an environment `{WithArrows}` (not an environment `{DispWithArrows}`) : 0 (`=t=\vtop`), 1 (`=c=\vcenter`) or 2 (`=b=\vbox`).

```
248 \int_new:N \l_@@_pos_env_int
```

The integer `\l_@@_pos_arrow_int` indicates the position of the arrow with the following code (the option `v` is accessible only for the arrows in `code-after` where the options `i`, `group` and `groups` are not available).

option	lr	ll	rl	rr	v	i	groups	group
<code>\l_@@_pos_arrow_int</code>	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7

The option `v` can be used only in `\Arrow` in `code-after` (see below).

```
249 \int_new:N \l_@@_pos_arrow_int
250 \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int 3
```

In the `\halign` of an environment `{WithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows}`, we will have to use four counters:

- `\g_@@_arrow_int` to count the arrows created in the environment ;
- `\g_@@_line_int` to count the lines of the `\halign` ;
- `\g_@@_col_int` to count the columns of the `\halign`.

These counters will be incremented in a cell of the `\halign` and, therefore, the incrementation must be global. However, we want to be able to include a `{WithArrows}` in another `{WithArrows}`. To do so, we must restore the previous value of these counters at the end of an environment `{WithArrows}` and we decide to manage a stack for each of these counters.

```
251 \seq_new:N \g_@@_arrow_int_seq
252 \int_new:N \g_@@_arrow_int
253 \seq_new:N \g_@@_line_int_seq
254 \int_new:N \g_@@_line_int
255 \seq_new:N \g_@@_col_int_seq
256 \int_new:N \g_@@_col_int
```

We will also use a “static” version of the counter of columns, called `\g_@@_static_col_int`. The value will be set directly in each cell of the array by an instruction in the template of the `\halign`. The aim of this programmation is to try to detect some use of `\omit` (which should be forbidden) in the cells of the `\halign`.

```
257 \seq_new:N \g_@@_static_col_int_seq
258 \int_new:N \g_@@_static_col_int
```

For the environment `{DispWithArrows}`, the comma list `\l_@@_tags_clist` will be the list of the numbers of lines to be tagged (with the counter `equation` of LaTeX). In fact, `\l_@@_tags_clist` may contain non negative integers but also three special values: `first`, `last` and `all`.

```
259 (*LaTeX)
260 \clist_new:N \l_@@_tags_clist
261 \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { all }
```

During the execution of an environment `{DispWithArrows}`, if a row must be tagged, the (local) value of `\l_@@_tags_clist` will be put (by convention) to `all`.

```
262 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_test_if_to_tag:
263 {
264   \clist_if_in:NVT \l_@@_tags_clist \g_@@_line_int
265   { \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { all } }
266 }
267 
```

If the user has given a value for the option `command-name` (at the global or at the *environment* level), a command with this name is defined locally in the environment with meaning `\@@_Arrow`. The initial value of the option `command-name` is “`Arrow`” and thus, by default, the name of the command will be `\Arrow`.

```
268 \str_new:N \l_@@_command_name_str
269 \str_set:Nn \l_@@_command_name_str { Arrow }
```

The string `\l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str` is only a string that will be displayed in some error messages. For example, if `command-name` is defined to be `Explanation`, this string will contain “`\Arrow alias \Explanation`”.

```
270 \str_new:N \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str
271 \str_set:Nx \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str { \token_to_str:N \Arrow }
```

The sequence `\g_@@_names_seq` will be the list of all the names of environments used (via the option `name`) in the document: two environments must not have the same name. However, it’s possible to use the option `allow-duplicate-names`.

```
272 \seq_new:N \g_@@_names_seq
```

The boolean `\l_@@_sbwi_bool` corresponds to the option `standard-behaviour-with-items`. Since the version 1.16 of `witharrows`, no vertical space is added between an `\item` of a LaTeX list and an environment `{DispWithArrows}`. With the option `standard-behaviour-with-items`, it’s possible to restore the previous behaviour (which corresponds to the standard behaviour of `{align}` of `amsmath`). `\l_@@_sbwi_bool` is the boolean corresponding to this option.

```
273 (*LaTeX)
274 \bool_new:N \l_@@_sbwi_bool
275 
```

```
276 (*LaTeX)
277 \bool_new:N \l_@@_tag_star_bool
278 \bool_new:N \l_@@_tag_next_line_bool
279 \bool_new:N \l_@@_qedhere_bool
280 
```

```
281 \bool_new:N \l_@@_in_first_columns_bool
282 \bool_new:N \l_@@_new_group_bool
283 \bool_new:N \l_@@_initial_r_bool
284 \bool_new:N \l_@@_final_r_bool
285 \tl_new:N \l_@@_initial_tl
286 \tl_new:N \l_@@_final_tl
287 \int_new:N \l_@@_nb_cols_int
```

The string `\l_@@_format_str` will contain the *format* of the array which is a succession of letters `r`, `c` and `l` specifying the type of the columns of the `\halign` (except the column for the labels of the equations in the environment `{DispWithArrows}`).

```
288 \str_new:N \l_@@_format_str
```

The option `\l_@@_subequations_bool` corresponds to the option `subequations`.

```
289 (*LaTeX)
290 \bool_new:N \l_@@_subequations_bool
291 
```

The dimension `\l_@@_arrow_width_dim` is only for the arrows of type `up` and `down`. A value of `\c_max_dim` means that the arrow has the maximal possible width. A value of 0 pt means that the the arrow has a width ajusted to the content of the node.

```
292 \dim_new:N \l_@@_arrow_width_dim
293 \dim_set_eq:NN \l_@@_arrow_width_dim \c_max_dim
```

The parameter `\l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim` corresponds to option `radius_for_up_and_down`.

```
294 \dim_new:N \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim
295 \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim { 4 pt }
```

The sequence `\l_@@_o_arrows_seq` will be used to store the numbers of the arrows which are of type `o` (for *over*) (they are drawn *after* the other arrows).

```
296 \seq_new:N \l_@@_o_arrows_seq
```

The dimension `\l_@@_xoffset_for_o_arrows_dim` is the xoffset added when drawing an arrow of type `o` (for *over*).

```
297 \dim_new:N \l_@@_xoffset_for_o_arrows_dim
298 \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_xoffset_for_o_arrows_dim { 2 mm }
```

The following boolean corresponds to the key `right-overlap`. When that key is `false`, the overlap on the right of the arrows (and their labels) is computed and it is used to change the width of the environment `{WithArrows}` in order to include the arrows on the right (and, hence, there is no overlap).

```
299 \bool_new:N \l_@@_right_overlap_bool
300 \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_right_overlap_bool
```

## 12.7 The definition of the options

There are four levels where options can be set:

- with `\usepackage[...]{witharrows}`: this level will be called *package* level;
- with `\WithArrowsOptions{...}`: this level will be called *global* level<sup>31</sup>;
- with `\begin{WithArrows}{...}`: this level will be called *environment* level;
- with `\Arrow{...}` (included in `code-after`): this level will be called *local* level.

When we scan a list of options, we want to be able to raise an error if two options of position (`ll`, `rl`, `i`, etc.) of the arrows are present. That's why we keep the first option of position in a variable called `\l_@@_previous_key_str`. The following function `\@@_eval_if_allowed:n` will execute its argument only if a first key of position has not been set (and raise an error elsewhere).

```
301 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_eval_if_allowed:n #1
302 {
303     \str_if_empty:NTF \l_@@_previous_key_str
304     {
305         \str_set_eq:NN \l_@@_previous_key_str \l_keys_key_str
306         #1
307     }
308     { \@@_error:n { Incompatible-options } }
309 }
310 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_fix_pos_option:n #1
311 { \@@_eval_if_allowed:n { \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int { #1 } } }
```

First a set of keys that will be used at the global or environment level of options.

```
312 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / Global }
313 {
314     max-length-of-arrow .dim_set:N = \l_@@_max_length_of_arrow_dim ,
315     max-length-of-arrow .value_required:n = true ,
316     max-length-of-arrow .initial:n = 2 cm ,
317     ygap .dim_set:N = \l_@@_ygap_dim ,
318     ygap .initial:n = 0.4 ex ,
319     ygap .value_required:n = true ,
320     ystart .dim_set:N = \l_@@_ystart_dim ,
321     ystart .value_required:n = true ,
322     ystart .initial:n = 0.4 ex ,
323     more-columns .code:n =
324         \@@_msg_redirect_name:nn { Too-much-columns-in-WithArrows } { none } ,
325     more-columns .value_forbidden:n = true ,
```

---

<sup>31</sup>This level is called *global level* but the settings done by `\WithArrowsOptions` are local in the TeX sense: their scope corresponds to the current TeX group.

```

326 command-name .code:n =
327   \str_set:Nn \l_@@_command_name_str { #1 }
328   \str_set:Nx \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str
329     { \c_backslash_str Arrow-alias~\c_backslash_str #1 } ,
330 command-name .value_required:n = true ,
331 tikz-code .tl_set:N = \l_@@_tikz_code_tl ,
332 tikz-code .initial:n = \draw-(#1)~to~node{#3}~-(#2)~; ,
333 tikz-code .value_required:n = true ,
334 displaystyle .bool_set:N = \l_@@_displaystyle_bool ,
335 displaystyle .default:n = true ,
336 show-nodes .code:n =
337   \tikzset { @_node_style / .append-style = { draw , red } } ,
338 show-node-names .bool_set:N = \l_@@_show_node_names_bool ,
339 show-node-names .default:n = true ,
340 group .code:n =
341   \str_if_empty:NTF \l_@@_previous_key_str
342   {
343     \str_set:Nn \l_@@_previous_key_str { group }
344     \seq_remove_all:Nn \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq { xoffset }
345     \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int 7
346   }
347   { @_error:n { Incompatible-options } } ,
348 group .value_forbidden:n = true ,
349 groups .code:n =
350   \str_if_empty:NTF \l_@@_previous_key_str
351   {
352     \str_set:Nn \l_@@_previous_key_str { groups }
353     \seq_if_in:NnF \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq { new-group }
354       { \seq_put_right:Nn \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq { new-group } }
355     \seq_remove_all:Nn \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq { xoffset }
356     \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int 6
357   }
358   { @_error:n { Incompatible-options } } ,
359 groups .value_forbidden:n = true ,
360 tikz .code:n = \tikzset { WithArrows / arrow / .append-style = { #1 } } ,
361 tikz .initial:n = \c_empty_tl ,
362 tikz .value_required:n = true ,
363 rr .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n 3 ,
364 rr .value_forbidden:n = true ,
365 ll .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n 1 ,
366 ll .value_forbidden:n = true ,
367 rl .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n 2 ,
368 rl .value_forbidden:n = true ,
369 lr .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n 0 ,
370 lr .value_forbidden:n = true ,
371 i .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n 5 ,
372 i .value_forbidden:n = true ,
373 xoffset .dim_set:N = \l_@@_xoffset_dim ,
374 xoffset .value_required:n = true ,
375 xoffset .initial:n = 3 mm ,
376 jot .dim_set:N = \jot ,
377 jot .value_required:n = true ,
378 interline .skip_set:N = \l_@@_interline_skip ,
379 start-adjust .dim_set:N = \l_@@_start_adjust_dim ,
380 start-adjust .initial:n = 0.4 ex ,
381 start-adjust .value_required:n = true ,
382 end-adjust .dim_set:N = \l_@@_end_adjust_dim ,
383 end-adjust .initial:n = 0.4 ex ,
384 end-adjust .value_required:n = true ,
385 adjust .meta:n = { start-adjust = #1 , end-adjust = #1 } ,
386 adjust .value_required:n = true ,
387 up-and-down .code:n = \keys_set:nn { WithArrows / up-and-down } { #1 } ,
388 up-and-down .value_required:n = true ,

```

With the option `no-arrows`, the arrows won't be drawn. However, the "first pass" of the arrows is done and some errors may be detected. The nullification of `\@@_draw_arrows:nn` is for the standard arrows and the nullification of `\@@_draw_arrow:nnn` is for "Arrow in code-after".

```

389   no-arrows .code:n =
390     \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_draw_arrows:nn \use_none:nn
391     \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_draw_arrow:nnn \use_none:nnn ,
392   no-arrows .value_forbidden:n = true
393 }
```

Now a set of keys specific to the environments `{WithArrows}` (and not `{DispWithArrow}`). Despite its name, this set of keys will also be used in `\WithArrowsOptions`.

```

394 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / WithArrowsSpecific }
395 {
396   t .code:n      = \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_env_int 0 ,
397   t .value_forbidden:n = true ,
398   c .code:n      = \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_env_int 1 ,
399   c .value_forbidden:n = true ,
400   b .code:n      = \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_env_int 2 ,
401   b .value_forbidden:n = true ,
402   right_overlap .bool_set:N      = \l_@@_right_overlap_bool ,
403   right_overlap .value_required:n = true
404 }
```

The following list of the (left) extensible delimiters of LaTeX is only for the validation of the key `replace-left-brace-by`.

```

405 \clist_new:N \c_@@_ext_delimiters_clist
406 \clist_set:Nn \c_@@_ext_delimiters_clist
407 {
408   ., \{, (, [, \lbrace, \lbrack, \lgroup, \langle, \lmoustache, \lceil, \lfloor
409 }
410 {*LaTeX}
411 \AtBeginDocument
412 {
413   \bool_set_false:N \l_tmpa_bool
414   \IfPackageLoadedTF { amsmath } { \bool_set_true:N \l_tmpa_bool } { }
415   \IfPackageLoadedTF { unicode-math } { \bool_set_true:N \l_tmpa_bool } { }
416   \bool_if:NT \l_tmpa_bool
417     { \clist_put_right:Nn \c_@@_ext_delimiters_clist { \lvert, \lVert } }
418 }
419 
```

Now a set of keys specific to the environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}` (and not `{WithArrows}`). Despite its name, this set of keys will also be used in `\WithArrowsOptions`.

```

420 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / DispWithArrowsSpecific }
421 {
422   fleqn .bool_set:N = \l_@@_fleqn_bool ,
423   fleqn .default:n = true ,
424   mathindent .skip_set:N = \l_@@_mathindent_skip ,
425   mathindent .initial:n = 25 pt ,
426   mathindent .value_required:n = true ,
427 {*LaTeX}
428   notag .code:n =
429     \str_if_eq:nnTF { #1 } { true }
430       { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_tags_clist }
431       { \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { all } } ,
432   notag .default:n = true ,
```

Since the option `subequations` is an option which insert the environment `{DispWithArrows}` in an environment `{subequations}` of `amsmath`, we must test whether the package `amsmath` is loaded.

```

433   subequations .code:n =
434     \IfPackageLoadedTF { amsmath }
```

```

435 { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_subequations_bool }
436 {
437     \@@_error:n { amsmath-not-loaded }
438     \group_begin:
439     \globaldefs = 1
440     \@@_msg_redirect_name:nn { amsmath-not-loaded } { info }
441     \group_end:
442 },
443 subequations .default:n = true ,
444 subequations .value_forbidden:n = true ,
445 nonumber .meta:n = notag ,
446 allow-multiple-labels .code:n =
447     \@@_msg_redirect_name:nn { Multiple-labels } { none } ,
448 allow-multiple-labels .value_forbidden:n = true ,
449 tagged-lines .code:n =
450     \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { #1 }
451     \clist_if_in:NnT \l_@@_tags_clist { first }
452     {
453         \clist_remove_all:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { first }
454         \clist_put_left:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist 1
455     },
456     tagged-lines .value_required:n = true ,
457 
```

`</LaTeX>`

```

458 wrap-lines .bool_set:N = \l_@@_wrap_lines_bool ,
459 wrap-lines .default:n = true ,
460 replace-left-brace-by .code:n =
461 {
462     \tl_set:Nx \l_tmpa_tl { \tl_head:n { #1 } }
463     \clist_if_in:NVTF
464         \c_@@_ext_delimiters_clist
465         \l_tmpa_tl
466         { \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_replace_left_brace_by_tl { #1 } }
467         { \@@_error:n { Bad-value-for-replace-brace-by } }
468     },
469     replace-left-brace-by .initial:n = \lbrace ,

```

Since the version 1.16 of `witharrows`, no vertical space is added between an `\item` of a `\LaTeX` list and an environment `{DispWithArrows}`. With the option `standard-behaviour-with-items`, it's possible to restore the previous behaviour (which corresponds to the standard behaviour of `{align}` of `amsmath`).

```

470 <*LaTeX>
471     standard-behaviour-with-items .bool_set:N = \l_@@_sbwi_bool ,
472     standard-behaviour-with-items .default:n = true
473 
```

`</LaTeX>`

`}`

Now a set of keys which will be used in all the environments (but not in `\WithArrowsOptions`).

```

475 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / Env }
476 {
477     name .code:n =

```

First, we convert the value in a `str` because the list of the names will be a list of `str`.

```

478     \str_set:Nn \l_tmpa_str { #1 }
479     \seq_if_in:NVTF \g_@@_names_seq \l_tmpa_str
480     { \@@_error:n { Duplicate-name } }
481     { \seq_gput_left:NV \g_@@_names_seq \l_tmpa_str }
482     \str_set_eq:NN \l_@@_name_str \l_tmpa_str ,
483     name .value_required:n = true ,
484     code-before .code:n = \tl_put_right:Nn \l_@@_code_before_tl { #1 } ,
485     code-before .value_required:n = true,
486     CodeBefore .meta:n = { code-before = #1 } ,
487     code-after .code:n = \tl_put_right:Nn \l_@@_code_after_tl { #1 } ,
488     code-after .value_required:n = true ,

```

```

489 CodeAfter .meta:n = { code-after = #1 } ,
490 format .code:n =
491   \tl_if_empty:nTF { #1 }
492   { \@@_error:n { Invalid~option~format } }
493   {
494     \regex_match:nnTF { \A[rclRCL]*\Z } { #1 }
495     { \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_format_str { #1 } }
496     { \@@_error:n { Invalid~option~format } }
497   } ,
498   format .value_required:n = true
499 }
```

Now, we begin the construction of the major sets of keys, named “`WithArrows / WithArrows`”, “`WithArrows / DispWithArrows`” and “`WithArrows / WithArrowsOptions`”. Each of these sets of keys will be completed after.

```

500 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows }
501 {
502   WithArrows .inherit:n =
503   {
504     WithArrows / Global ,
505     WithArrows / WithArrowsSpecific ,
506     WithArrows / Env
507   } ,
508   WithArrows / up-and-down .inherit:n = WithArrows / up-and-down ,
509   DispWithArrows .inherit:n =
510   {
511     WithArrows / DispWithArrowsSpecific ,
512     WithArrows / Global ,
513     WithArrows / Env ,
514   } ,
515   DispWithArrows / up-and-down .inherit:n = WithArrows / up-and-down ,
516   WithArrowsOptions .inherit:n =
517   {
518     WithArrows / Global ,
519     WithArrows / WithArrowsSpecific ,
520     WithArrows / DispWithArrowsSpecific ,
521   } ,
522   WithArrowsOptions / up-and-down .inherit:n = WithArrows / up-and-down
523 }
```

A sequence of `str` for the options available in `{WithArrows}`. This sequence will be used in the error messages and can be modified dynamically.

```

524 \seq_new:N \l_@@_options_WithArrows_seq
525 \@@_set_seq_of_str_from_clist:Nn \l_@@_options_WithArrows_seq
526 {
527   adjust, b, c, code-after, code-before, command-name,
528   right-overlap, displaystyle, end-adjust,
529   format, group, groups, i,
530   interline, jot, ll,
531   lr, max-length-of-arrow, more-columns, name,
532   no-arrows, rl, rr, up-and-down,
533   show-node-names, show-nodes, start-adjust,
534   t, tikz, tikz-code,
535   xoffset, ygap, ystart
536 }

537 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / WithArrows }
538 {
539   unknown .code:n =
540   \@@_sort_seq:N \l_@@_options_WithArrows_seq
541   \@@_error:n { Unknown~option~WithArrows }
542 }
```

```

543 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / DispWithArrows }
544 {
545   left-brace .tl_set:N = \l_@@_left_brace_tl ,
546   unknown .code:n =
547     \@@_sort_seq:N \l_@@_options_DispatchWithArrows_seq
548   \@@_error:n { Unknown~option~DispWithArrows } ,
549 }

```

A sequence of the options available in `{DispWithArrows}`. This sequence will be used in the error messages and can be modified dynamically.

```

550 \seq_new:N \l_@@_options_DispatchWithArrows_seq
551 \@@_set_seq_of_str_from_clist:Nn \l_@@_options_DispatchWithArrows_seq
552 {
553   code-after, code-before, command-name, tikz-code, adjust,
554   displaystyle, end-adjust, fleqn, group, format, groups, i, interline, jot,
555   left-brace, ll, lr, max-length-of-arrow, mathindent, name, no-arrows,
556   up-and-down, replace-left-brace-by, rl, rr, show-node-names,
557   show-nodes, start-adjust, tikz, wrap-lines, xoffset, ygap, ystart,
558   (*LaTeX)
559   allow-multiple-labels, tagged-lines, nonumber, notag
560 
```

```

561   }
562 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / WithArrowsOptions }
563 {
564   allow-duplicate-names .code:n =
565     \@@_msg_redirect_name:nn { Duplicate-name } { none } ,
566   allow-duplicate-names .value_forbidden:n = true ,
567   xoffset-for-o-arrows .dim_set:N = \l_@@_xoffset_for_o_arrows_dim ,
568   xoffset-for-o-arrows .value_required:n = true ,
569   unknown .code:n =
570     \@@_sort_seq:N \l_@@_options_WithArrowsOptions_seq
571   \@@_error:n { Unknown~option~WithArrowsOptions }
572 }

```

A sequence of the options available in `\WithArrowsOptions`. This sequence will be used in the error messages and can be modified dynamically.

```

573 \seq_new:N \l_@@_options_WithArrowsOptions_seq
574 \@@_set_seq_of_str_from_clist:Nn \l_@@_options_WithArrowsOptions_seq
575 {
576   allow-duplicate-names, b, c, command-name, right_overlap,
577   more-columns, tikz-code, adjust,
578   displaystyle, end-adjust, fleqn, group, groups, i, interline, jot, ll, lr,
579   mathindent, max-length-of-arrow, no-arrows, up-and-down, rl, rr,
580   show-node-names, show-nodes, start-adjust, t, tikz, wrap-lines, xoffset,
581   xoffset-for-o-arrows, ygap, ystart,
582   (*LaTeX)
583   allow-multiple-labels, nonumber, notag, standard-behaviour-with-items,
584   tagged-lines
585 
```

```

586   }

```

The command `\@@_set_independent:` is a command without argument that will be used to specify that the arrow will be “independent” (of the potential groups of the option group or groups). This information will be stored in the field “status” of the arrow. Another possible value of the field “status” is “new-group”.

```

587 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_set_independent:
588 {
589   \str_if_eq:VnF \l_keys_value_tl { NoValue }
590   { \@@_error:n { Value~for~a~key } }
591   \@@_set_independent_bis:
592 }

```

The command `\@@_set_independent_bis:` is the same as `\@@_set_independent:` except that the key may be used with a value.

```

593 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_set_independent_bis:
594 {
595     \str_if_empty:NTF \l_@@_previous_key_str
596     {
597         \str_set_eq:NN \l_@@_previous_key_str \l_keys_key_str
598         \str_set:Nn \l_@@_status_arrow_str { independent }
599     }
600     { \@@_error:n { Incompatible~options~in~Arrow } }
601 }
```

The options of an individual arrow are parsed twice. The first pass is when the command `\Arrow` is read. The second pass is when the arrows are drawn (after the end of the environment `{WithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows}`). Now, we present the set of keys for the first pass. The main goal is to extract informations which will be necessary during the scan of the arrows. For instance, we have to know if some arrows are “independent” or use the option “new-group”.

```

602 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / Arrow / FirstPass }
603 {
604     jump .code:n =
605         \int_compare:nTF { #1 > 0 }
606         { \int_set:Nn \l_@@_jump_int { #1 } }
607         { \@@_error:n { Negative~jump } } ,
608     jump .value_required:n = true,
609     rr .code:n = \@@_set_independent: ,
610     ll .code:n = \@@_set_independent: ,
611     rl .code:n = \@@_set_independent: ,
612     lr .code:n = \@@_set_independent: ,
613     i .code:n = \@@_set_independent: ,
614     rr .default:n = NoValue ,
615     ll .default:n = NoValue ,
616     rl .default:n = NoValue ,
617     lr .default:n = NoValue ,
618     i .default:n = NoValue ,
619     new-group .value_forbidden:n = true ,
620     new-group .code:n =
621         \int_compare:nTF { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 6 }
622         { \str_set:Nn \l_@@_status_arrow_str { new-group } }
623         { \@@_error:n { new-group-without-groups } } ,
624     o .code:n =
625         \str_if_empty:NTF \l_@@_previous_key_str
626         {
627             \int_compare:nNnTF \l_@@_pos_arrow_int < 6
628             { \@@_error:n { invalid~key~o } }
629             {
630                 \str_set:Nn \l_@@_status_arrow_str { over }
631                 \str_set_eq:NN \l_@@_previous_key_str \l_keys_key_str
632             }
633         }
634         { \@@_error:n { Incompatible~options~in~Arrow } } ,
```

The other keys don’t give any information necessary during the scan of the arrows. However, you try to detect errors and that’s why all the keys are listed in this keys set. An unknown key will be detected at the point of the command `\Arrow` and not at the end of the environment.

```

635 tikz-code .code:n = \prg_do_nothing: ,
636 tikz-code .value_required:n = true ,
637 tikz .code:n = \prg_do_nothing: ,
638 tikz .value_required:n = true ,
639 start-adjust .code:n = \prg_do_nothing: ,
640 start-adjust .value_required:n = true ,
641 end-adjust .code:n = \prg_do_nothing: ,
642 end-adjust .value_required:n = true ,
```

```

643 adjust .code:n = \prg_do_nothing: ,
644 adjust .value_required:n = true ,
645 xoffset .code:n =
646 unknown .code:n =
647   \@@_sort_seq:N \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq
648   \seq_if_in:NNTF \l_@@_options_WithArrows_seq \l_keys_key_str
649   {
650     \str_set:Nn \l_tmpa_str
651     { ~However,~this~key~can~be~used~in~the~options~of~{WithArrows}. }
652   }
653   { \str_clear:N \l_tmpa_str }
654 \@@_error:n { Unknown~option~in~Arrow }
655 }

```

A sequence of the options available in `\Arrow`. This sequence will be used in the error messages and can be modified dynamically.

```

656 \seq_new:N \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq
657 \@@_set_seq_of_str_from_clist:Nn \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq
658 {
659   adjust, end-adjust, i, jump, ll, lr, o , rl, rr, start-adjust, tikz,
660   tikz-code, xoffset
661 }

662 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_fix_pos_arrow:n #1
663 {
664   \str_if_empty:NT \l_@@_previous_key_str
665   {
666     \str_set_eq:NN \l_@@_previous_key_str \l_keys_key_str
667     \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int { #1 }
668   }
669 }

```

The options of the individual commands `\Arrows` are scanned twice. The second pass is just before the drawing of the arrow. In this set of keys, we don't put an item for the unknown keys because an unknown key would have been already detected during the first pass.

```

670 \keys_define:nn {WithArrows / Arrow / SecondPass}
671 {
672   tikz-code .tl_set:N = \l_@@_tikz_code_tl ,
673   tikz-code .initial:n = \draw-(#1)~to~node{#3}~-(#2)~; ,
674   tikz .code:n = \tikzset { WithArrows / arrow / .append-style = { #1 } } ,
675   tikz .initial:n = \c_empty_tl ,
676   rr .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_arrow:n 3 ,
677   ll .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_arrow:n 1 ,
678   rl .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_arrow:n 2 ,
679   lr .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_arrow:n 0 ,
680   i .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_arrow:n 5 ,
681   o .code:n = \str_set:Nn \l_@@_previous_key_str { o } ,

```

The option `xoffset` is not allowed when the option `group` or the option `groups` is used except, if the arrow is independent or if there is only one arrow.

```

682 xoffset .code:n =
683   \bool_if:nTF
684   {
685     \int_compare_p:nNn \g_@@_arrow_int > 1
686     &&
687     \int_compare_p:nNn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int > 5
688     &&
689     ! \str_if_eq_p:Vn \l_@@_status_arrow_str { independent }
690   }
691   { \@@_error:n { Option-xoffset-forbidden } }
692   { \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_xoffset_dim { #1 } } ,

```

```

693 xoffset .value_required:n = true ,
694 start-adjust .dim_set:N = \l_@@_start_adjust_dim,
695 end-adjust .dim_set:N = \l_@@_end_adjust_dim,
696 adjust .code:n =
697   \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_start_adjust_dim { #1 }
698   \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_end_adjust_dim { #1 } ,
699 }
```

\WithArrowsOptions is the command of the `witharrows` package to fix options at the document level. It's possible to fix in \WithArrowsOptions some options specific to `{WithArrows}` (in contrast with `{DispWithArrows}`) or specific to `{DispWithArrows}` (in contrast with `{WithArrows}`). That's why we have constructed a set of keys specific to \WithArrowsOptions.

```

700 <*LaTeX>
701 \NewDocumentCommand \WithArrowsOptions { m }
702 </LaTeX>
703 <*plain-TeX>
704 \cs_set_protected:Npn \WithArrowsOptions #1
705 </plain-TeX>
706 {
707   \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_previous_key_str
708   \keys_set:nn { WithArrows / WithArrowsOptions } { #1 }
709 }
```

## 12.8 The command \Arrow

In fact, the internal command is not named \Arrow but \@@\_Arrow. Usually, at the beginning of an environment `{WithArrows}`, \Arrow is set to be equivalent to \@@\_Arrow. However, the user can change the name with the option `command-name` and the user command for \@@\_Arrow will be different. This mechanism can be useful when the user has already a command named \Arrow he still wants to use in the environments `{WithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows}`.

```

710 <*LaTeX>
711 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_Arrow
712   { \@@_collect_options:n { \@@_Arrow_i } }
713 \NewDocumentCommand \@@_Arrow_i { m m ! O { } }
714 </LaTeX>
715 <*plain-TeX>
716 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_Arrow
717   {
718     \peek_meaning:NTF [
719       { \@@_Arrow_i }
720       { \@@_Arrow_i [ ] }
721     ]
722   \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_Arrow_i [ #1 ] #2
723   {
724     \peek_meaning:NTF [
725       { \@@_Arrow_ii [ #1 ] { #2 } }
726       { \@@_Arrow_ii [ #1 ] { #2 } [ ] }
727     ]
728   \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_Arrow_ii [ #1 ] #2 [ #3 ]
729 </plain-TeX>
730 {
```

The counter \g\_@@\_arrow\_int counts the arrows in the environment. The incrementation must be global (`gincr`) because the command \Arrow will be used in the cell of a \halign. It's recalled that we manage a stack for this counter.

```
731   \int_gincr:N \g_@@_arrow_int
```

We will construct a global property list to store the informations of the considered arrow. The six fields of this property list are “initial”, “final”, “status”, “options”, “label” and “input-line”. In order to compute the value of “final” (the destination row of the arrow), we have to take into account

a potential option `jump`. In order to compute the value of the field “status”, we have to take into account options `ll`, `rl`, `rr`, `lr`, etc. or `new-group`.

We will do that job with a first analyze of the options of the command `\Arrow` with a dedicated set of keys called `WithArrows/Arrow/FirstPass`.

```
732 \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_previous_key_str
733 \keys_set:nn { WithArrows / Arrow / FirstPass } { #1 , #3 }
```

We construct now a global property list to store the informations of the considered arrow with the six fields “initial”, “final”, “status”, “options”, “label” and “input-line”.

1. First, the row from which the arrow starts:

```
734 \prop_put:NnV \l_tmpa_prop { initial } \g_@@_line_int
```

2. The row where the arrow ends (that’s why it was necessary to analyze the key `jump`):

```
735 \int_set:Nn \l_tmpa_int { \g_@@_line_int + \l_@@_jump_int }
736 \prop_put:NnV \l_tmpa_prop { final } \l_tmpa_int
```

3. The “status” of the arrow, with 4 possible values: empty, `independent`, `new-group` or `over`.

```
737 \prop_put:NnV \l_tmpa_prop { status } \l_@@_status_arrow_str
```

4. The options of the arrow (it’s a token list):

```
738 \prop_put:Nnn \l_tmpa_prop { options } { #1 , #3 }
```

5. The label of the arrow (it’s also a token list):

```
739 \prop_put:Nnn \l_tmpa_prop { label } { #2 }
```

6. The number of the line where the command `\Arrow` is issued in the TeX source (as of now, this is only useful for some error messages).

```
740 \prop_put:Nnx \l_tmpa_prop { input-line } \msg_line_number:
```

7. The total width of the arrow (with the label)... but we don’t know it now and that’s why we put `0 pt`. There are used for the arrows of type `o`.

```
741 \prop_put:Nnn \l_tmpa_prop { width } { 0 pt }
```

The property list has been created in a local variable for convenience. Now, it will be stored in a global variable indicating both the position-in-the-tree and the number of the arrow.

```
742 \prop_gclear_new:
743   { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \g_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
744 \prop_gset_eq:cN
745   { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \g_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
746   \l_tmpa_prop
747 }
```

The command `\Arrow` (or the corresponding command with a name given by the user with the option `command-name`) will be available only in the last column of the environments `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`. In the other columns, the command will be linked to the following command `\@@_Arrow_first_columns`: which will raise an error.

```
748 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_Arrow_first_columns:
749   { \@@_error:n { Arrow-not-in-last-column } \@@_Arrow }
```

## 12.9 The environments {WithArrows} and {DispWithArrows}

### 12.9.1 Code before the \halign

The command `\@@_pre_halign:n` is a code common to the environments `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`. The argument is the list of options given to the environment.

```
750 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_pre_halign:n #1
```

First, the initialization of `\l_@@_type_env_str` which is the name of the encompassing environment. In fact, this token list is used only in the error messages.

```
751 {
752 (*LaTeX)
753 \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_type_env_str
754 \str_set:NV \l_@@_type_env_str \currenvir
755 
```

We deactivate the potential externalization of Tikz. The Tikz elements created by `witharrows` can't be externalized since they are created in Tikz pictures with `overlay` and `remember picture`.

```
756 \cs_if_exist:NT \tikz@library@external@loaded
757   { \tikzset { external / export = false } }
```

```
758 \tikzset { arrows = [ flex ] } % https://texnique.fr/osqa/questions/12199
```

The token list `\l_@@_name_str` will contain the potential name of the environment (given with the option `name`). This name will be used to create aliases for the names of the nodes.

```
759 \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_name_str
```

The parameter `\l_@@_status_arrow_str` will be used to store the "status" of an individual arrow. It will be used to fill the field "status" in the property list describing an arrow.

```
760 \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_status_arrow_str
```

The dimension `\l_@@_x_dim` will be used to compute the *x*-value for some vertical arrows when one of the options `i`, `group` and `groups` (values 5, 6 and 7 of `\l_@@_pos_arrow_int`) is used.

```
761 \dim_zero_new:N \l_@@_x_dim
```

The variable `\l_@@_input_line_str` will be used only to store, for each command `\Arrow` the line (in the TeX file) where the command is issued. This information will be stored in the field "input-line" of the arrow. As of now, this information is used only in some error messages.

```
762 \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_input_line_str
```

Initialization of `\g_@@_arrow_int`, `\g_@@_line_int`, `\g_@@_col_int` and `\g_@@_static_col_int`. However, we have to save their previous values with the stacks created for this end.

```
763 \seq_gput_right:NV \g_@@_arrow_int_seq \g_@@_arrow_int
764 \int_gzero:N \g_@@_arrow_int
765 \seq_gput_right:NV \g_@@_line_int_seq \g_@@_line_int
766 \int_gzero:N \g_@@_line_int
767 \seq_gput_right:NV \g_@@_col_int_seq \g_@@_col_int
768 \int_gzero:N \g_@@_col_int
769 \seq_gput_right:NV \g_@@_static_col_int_seq \g_@@_static_col_int
770 \int_gzero:N \g_@@_static_col_int
```

In the preamble of the `\halign`, there will be *two* counters of the columns. The aim of this programming is to detect the use of a command `\omit` in a cell of the `\halign` (it should be forbidden). For example, in the part of the preamble concerning the third column (if there is a third column in the environment), we will have the following instructions :

```
\int_gincr:N \g_@@_col_int
\int_set:Nn \g_@@_static_col_int 3
```

The counter `\g_@@_col_int` is incremented dynamically and the second is static. If the user has used a command `\omit`, the dynamic incrementation is not done in the cell and, at the end of the row, the difference between the counters may infer the presence of `\omit` at least once.

We also have to update the position on the nesting tree.

```
771 \seq_gput_right:Nn \g_@@_position_in_the_tree_seq 1
```

The nesting tree is used to create a prefix which will be used in the names of the Tikz nodes and in the names of the arrows (each arrow is a property list of six fields). If we are in the second environment `{WithArrows}` nested in the third environment `{WithArrows}` of the document, the prefix will be `3-2` (although the position in the tree is `[3, 2, 1]` since such a position always ends with a `1`). First, we do a copy of the position-in-the-tree and then we pop the last element of this copy (in order to drop the last `1`).

```
772 \seq_set_eq:NN \l_tmpa_seq \g_@@_position_in_the_tree_seq
773 \seq_pop_right:NN \l_tmpa_seq \l_tmpa_tl
774 \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_prefix_str
775 \str_set:Nx \l_@@_prefix_str { \seq_use:Nnnn \l_tmpa_seq --- }
```

We define the command `\\"` to be the command `\@_cr`: (defined below).

```
776 \cs_set_eq:NN \\ \@_cr:
777 \dim_zero:N \mathsurround
```

These counters will be used later as variables.

```
778 \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_initial_int
779 \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_final_int
780 \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_arrow_int
781 \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_pos_of_arrow_int
782 \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_jump_int
```

The counter `\l_@@_jump_int` corresponds to the option `jump`. Now, we set the initial value for this option.

```
783 \int_set:Nn \l_@@_jump_int 1
```

The string `\l_@@_format_str` corresponds to the option `format`. Now, we set the initial value for this option.

```
784 \str_set:Nn \l_@@_format_str { rL }
```

In (the last column of) `{DispWithArrows}`, it's possible to put several labels (for the same number of equation). That's why these labels will be stored in a sequence `\l_@@_labels_seq`.

```
785 (*LaTeX)
786 \seq_clear_new:N \l_@@_labels_seq
787 \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_tag_next_line_bool
788 
```

The value corresponding to the key `interline` is put to zero before the treatment of the options of the environment.<sup>32</sup>

```
789 \skip_zero:N \l_@@_interline_skip
```

The value corresponding to the key `code-before` is put to nil before the treatment of the options of the environment, because, of course, we don't want the code executed at the beginning of all the nested environments `{WithArrows}`. Idem for `code-after`.

```
790 \tl_clear_new:N \l_@@_code_before_tl
791 \tl_clear_new:N \l_@@_code_after_tl
```

---

<sup>32</sup>It's recalled that, by design, the option `interline` of an environment doesn't apply in the nested environments.

We process the options given to the environment `{WithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows}`.

```

792 \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_previous_key_str
793 \bool_if:NT \l_@@_in_WithArrows_bool
794   { \keys_set:nn { WithArrows / WithArrows } { #1 } }
795 \bool_if:NT \l_@@_in_DispatchWithArrows_bool
796   { \keys_set:nn { WithArrows / DispatchWithArrows } { #1 } }

```

The dimension `\g_@@_overlap_x_dim` will be the maximal overlap on the right of the arrows (and their labels) drawn in the environment `{WithArrows}`. The dimension `\l_@@_delta_x_dim` will be the difference of abscissa between the right side of the alignment (`\halign`) and the left side of the arrow.

```

797 \bool_if:NF \l_@@_right_overlap_bool
798   {
799     \bool_if:NT \l_@@_in_WithArrows_bool
800       {
801         \dim_gzero_new:N \g_@@_overlap_x_dim
802         \dim_zero_new:N \l_@@_delta_x_dim
803       }
804   }

```

Now we link the command `\Arrow` (or the corresponding command with a name given by the user with the option `command-name`: that's why the following line must be after the loading of the options) to the command `\@@_Arrow_first_columns`: which will raise an error.

```
805 \cs_set_eq:cN \l_@@_command_name_str \@@_Arrow_first_columns:
```

It's only in the last column of the environment that it will be linked to the command `\@@_Arrow::`

The counter `\l_@@_nb_cols_int` is the number of columns in the `\halign` (excepted the column for the labels of equations in `{DispWithArrows}` and excepted eventuals other columns in `{WithArrows}` allowed by the option `more-columns`).

```
806 \int_set:Nn \l_@@_nb_cols_int { \str_count:N \l_@@_format_str }
```

Be careful! The following counter `\g_@@_col_int` will be used for two usages:

- during, the construction of the preamble of the `\halign`, it will be used as counter for the number of the column under construction in the preamble (since the preamble is constructed backwards, `\g_@@_col_int` will go decreasing from `\l_@@_nb_cols_int` to 1) ;
- once the preamble constructed, the primitive `\halign` is executed, and, in each row of the `\halign`, the counter `\g_@@_col_int` will be increased from column to column.

```
807 \int_gset_eq:NN \g_@@_col_int \l_@@_nb_cols_int
```

We convert the format in a sequence because we use it as a stack (with the top of the stack at the end of the sequence) in the construction of the preamble.

```

808 \seq_clear_new:N \l_@@_format_seq
809 \seq_set_split:NnV \l_@@_format_seq { } \l_@@_format_str

```

If the option `footnote` or the option `footnotehyper` is used, then we extract the footnotes with an environment `{savenotes}` (of the package `footnote` or the package `footnotehyper`).

```

810 (*LaTeX)
811 \bool_if:NT \c_@@_footnote_bool { \begin{ savenotes } }
812 (/LaTeX)

```

We execute the code `\l_@@_code_before_t1` of the option `code-before` of the environment after the potential `\begin{savenotes}` and, symmetrically, we will execute the `\l_@@_code_after_t1` before the potential `\end{savenotes}` (we have a good reason for the last point: we want to extract the footnotes of the arrows executed in the `code-after`).

```
813 \l_@@_code_before_t1
```

```

814  {*LaTeX}
815   \cs_set_eq:NN \notag \@@_notag:
816   \cs_set_eq:NN \nonumber \@@_nonumber:
817   \cs_set_eq:NN \tag \@@_tag
818   \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_old_label \label
819   \cs_set_eq:NN \label \@@_label:n
820   \cs_set_eq:NN \tagnextline \@@_tagnextline:
821 
```

This is the end of `\@@_pre_halign:n`.

### 12.9.2 The construction of the preamble of the `\halign`

The control sequence `\@@_construct_halign:` will “start” the `\halign` and the preamble. In fact, it constructs all the preamble excepted the end of the last column (more precisely: except the part concerning the construction of the left node and the right node).

The same function `\@@_construct_halign:` will be used both for the environment `{WithArrows}` and the environment `{DispWithArrows}`.

Several important points must be noted concerning that construction of the preamble.

- The construction of the preamble is done by reading backwards the format `\l_@@_format_str` and adding the corresponding tokens in the input stream of TeX. That means that the part of the preamble concerning the last cell will be constructed first.
- The function `\@@_construct_halign:` is recursive in order to treat successively all the letters of the preamble.
- Each part of the preamble is created with a `\use:e` function. This expansion of the preamble gives the ability of controlling which parts of the code will be expanded during the construction of the preamble (other parts will be expanded and executed only during the execution of the `\halign`).
- The counter `\g_@@_col_int` is used during the loop of the construction of the preamble but, it will also appears in the preamble (we could have chosen two different counters but this way saves a counter).

```

823 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_construct_halign:
824 {
825   \seq_pop_right:NNTF \l_@@_format_seq \l_@@_type_col_str
826 }
```

Here is the `\use:e` which is fundamental: it will really construct the part of the preamble corresponding to a column by expanding only some parts of the following code.

```

827   \use:e
828 }
```

Before the recursive call of `\@@_construct_halign:`, we decrease the integer `\g_@@_col_bool`. But, during the construction of the column which is constructed first (that is to say which is the last column of the `\halign`), it is *not* lowered because `\int_decr:N`, which is protected, won’t be expanded by the `\use:e`.

We begin the construction of a generic column.

```

829   \int_gdecr:N \g_@@_col_int
830   \@@_construct_halign:
831   \int_compare:nNnT \g_@@_col_int = \l_@@_nb_cols_int
832 }
```

We redefine the command `\Arrow` (or the name given to the corresponding command by the option `command-name`) in each cell of the last column. The braces around `\l_@@_command_name_str` are mandatory because `\l_@@_command_name_str` will be expanded by the `\use:e` and the command `\cs_set_eq:cN` must still be efficient during the execution of the `\halign`.

```

833   \cs_set_eq:cN { \l_@@_command_name_str } \@@_Arrow
834 
```

```
835   \bool_if:NT \l_@@_in_DispatchWithArrows_bool
```

```
836 {
```

The command `\@@_test_if_to_tag`: (which is protected and, thus, will not be expanded during the construction of the preamble) will test, at each row, whether the current row must be tagged (and the tag will be put in the very last column).

```
837     \@@_test_if_to_tag:
```

The command `\@@_set_qedhere`: will do a redefinition of `\qedhere` in each cell of the last column.

```
838         \IfPackageLoadedTF { amsmath } { \@@_set_qedhere: } { }
839     }
840 
```

$$\langle /LaTeX \rangle$$

```
841     }
842     \str_if_eq:VnT \l_@@_type_col_str { c } \hfil
843     \str_if_eq:VnT \l_@@_type_col_str { C } \hfil
844     \str_if_eq:VnT \l_@@_type_col_str { r } \hfill
845     \str_if_eq:VnT \l_@@_type_col_str { R } \hfill
846     \int_gincr:N \g_@@_col_int
847     \int_gset:Nn \g_@@_static_col_int { \int_use:N \g_@@_col_int }
848     \c_math_toggle_token
849     \str_if_eq:VnT \l_@@_type_col_str { C } { { } }
850     \str_if_eq:VnT \l_@@_type_col_str { L } { { } }
851     \bool_if:NT \l_@@_displaystyle_bool \displaystyle
852     ##
853     \str_if_eq:VnT \l_@@_type_col_str { C } { { } }
854     \str_if_eq:VnT \l_@@_type_col_str { R } { { } }
855     \c_math_toggle_token
856     \int_compare:nNnTF \g_@@_col_int = \l_@@_nb_cols_int
857     \@@_construct_nodes:
858     {
```

The following glue (`\hfil`) will be added only if we are not in the last cell because, in the last cell, a glue (=skip) is added between the nodes (in `\@@_construct_nodes`):

```
859         \str_if_eq:VnT \l_@@_type_col_str { 1 } \hfil
860         \str_if_eq:VnT \l_@@_type_col_str { L } \hfil
861         \str_if_eq:VnT \l_@@_type_col_str { c } \hfil
862         \str_if_eq:VnT \l_@@_type_col_str { C } \hfil
863         \bool_if:NT \l_@@_in_DispatchWithArrows_bool { \tabskip = \c_zero_skip }
864         &
865     }
866 }
867 }
```

Now the tokens that will be inserted after the analyze of all the tokens of the format: here is the token `\halign`.

```
868 {
869     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_in_WithArrows_bool
870     {
871         \ialign
872         \bgroup
873     }
874     {
875         \halign to \l_@@_linewidth_dim
876         \bgroup
877         \bool_if:NT \l_@@_fleqn_bool
878             { \skip_horizontal:N \l_@@_mathindent_skip }
879         }
880         \int_gincr:N \g_@@_line_int
881         \int_gzero:N \g_@@_col_int
882         \tl_if_eq:NNF \l_@@_left_brace_tl \c_novalue_tl
883         {
884             \skip_horizontal:n
885             { \box_wd:N \l_@@_left_brace_box + \l_@@_delim_wd_dim }
886         }
887         \strut
888     }
889 }
```

The command `\@@_construct_nodes:` is only for the lisibility of the code because, in fact, it is used only once. It constructs the “left node” and the “right node” at the end of each row of the arrow.

```
890 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_construct_nodes:
891 {
```

We create the “left node” of the line (when using macros in Tikz node names, the macros have to be fully expandable: here, `\int_use:N` is fully expandable).

```
892 \tikz [ remember-picture , overlay ]
893   \node
894   [
895     node~contents = { } ,
896     @@_node_style ,
897     name = wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - l ,
898   ]
899 ;
900 \hfil
```

Now, after the `\hfil`, we create the “right node” and, if the option `show-node-names` is raised, the name of the node is written in the document (useful for debugging).

```
901 \tikz [ remember-picture , overlay ]
902   \node
903   [
904     node~contents = { } ,
905     @@_node_style ,
906     name = wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - r ,
907   ]
908 ;
909 \str_if_empty:NF \l_@@_name_str
910 {
911   \pgfpicture
912   \pgfnodealias
913   { \l_@@_name_str - \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - l }
914   { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - l }
915   \pgfnodealias
916   { \l_@@_name_str - \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - r }
917   { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - r }
918   \endpgfpicture
919 }
920 \bool_if:NT \l_@@_show_node_names_bool
921 {
922   \hbox_overlap_right:n
923   { \small wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - r }
924 }
```

### 12.9.3 The environment {WithArrows}

```
926 (*LaTeX)
927 \NewDocumentEnvironment { WithArrows } { ! O { } }
928 (/LaTeX)
929 (*plain-TeX)
930 \cs_new_protected:Npn \WithArrows
931 {
932   \group_begin:
933   \peek_meaning:NTF [
934   { \WithArrows_i }
935   { \WithArrows_i [ ] }
936 }
937 \cs_new_protected:Npn \WithArrows_i [ #1 ]
938 (/plain-TeX)
939 {
940   \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_in_WithArrows_bool
```

```

941   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_in_DispWithArrows_bool
942   <*plain-TeX>
943   \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_type_env_str
944   \str_set:Nn \l_@@_type_env_str { WithArrows }
945   </plain-TeX>
946   \@@_pre_halign:n { #1 }
947   \if_mode_math: \else:
948     \@@_error:n { WithArrows-outside~math-mode }
949   \fi:
950   \box_clear_new:N \l_@@_env_box
951   \hbox_set:Nw \l_@@_env_box

```

The environment begins with a `\vtop`, a `\vcenter` or a `\vbox`<sup>33</sup> depending of the value of `\l_@@_pos_env_int` (fixed by the options `t`, `c` or `b`). The environment `{WithArrows}` must be used in math mode<sup>34</sup> and therefore, we can use `\vcenter`.

```

952   \int_compare:nNnT \l_@@_pos_env_int = 1 \c_math_toggle_token
953   \int_case:nn \l_@@_pos_env_int { 0 \vtop 1 \vcenter 2 \vbox }
954   \bgroup

```

The command `\spread@equation` is the command used by `amsmath` in the beginning of an alignment to fix the interline. When used, it becomes no-op. However, it's possible to use `witharrows` without `amsmath` since we have redefined `\spread@equation` (if it is not defined yet).

```

955   \spread@equation

```

We begin the `\halign` and the preamble. During the construction of the preamble, `\l_tmpa_int` will be incremented during each column constructed.

```

956   \@@_construct_halign:

```

In fact, the construction of the preamble is not finished. We add a little more.

An environment `{WithArrows}` should have a number of columns equal to the length of its format (by default, 2 since the default format is `r1`). Nevertheless, if the user wants to use more columns (without arrows) it's possible with the option `more-columns`.

```

957   &&
958   \@@_error:n { Too-much-columns-in-WithArrows }
959   \c_math_toggle_token
960   \bool_if:NT \l_@@_displaystyle_bool \displaystyle
961   { ## }
962   \c_math_toggle_token
963   \cr
964 }

```

We begin the second part of the environment `{WithArrows}`. We have three `\egroup`: one for the `\halign`, one for the `\vtop` (or `\vcenter` or `\vbox`) and one for the `\hbox_set:Nn \l_@@_env_box`.

```

965   <*plain-TeX>
966   \cs_new_protected:Npn \endWithArrows
967   </plain-TeX>
968   {
969     \\
970     \egroup
971     \egroup
972     \int_compare:nNnT \l_@@_pos_env_int = 1 \c_math_toggle_token
973     \hbox_set_end:
974     \@@_post_halign:

```

We want to add white space on the right side of the box in order to take into account the arrows and their labels.

```

975   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_right_overlap_bool

```

---

<sup>33</sup>Notice that the use of `\vtop` seems color-safe here...

<sup>34</sup>An error is raised if the environment is used outside math mode.

```

976      {
977          \box_set_wd:Nn \l_@@_env_box
978          { \g_@@_overlap_x_dim + \box_wd:N \l_@@_env_box }
979      }
980      \box_use_drop:N \l_@@_env_box

```

If the option `footnote` or the option `footnotehyper` is used, then we extract the footnotes with an environment `{footnote}` (of the package `footnote` or the package `footnotehyper`).

```

981  {*LaTeX}
982    \bool_if:NT \c_@@_footnote_bool { \end { savenotes } }
983  
```

```
984  
```

```
985    \group_end:
986  
```

```
987  }
```

This is the end of the environment `{WithArrows}`.

#### 12.9.4 After the construction of the `\halign`

The command `\@@_post_halign:` is a code common to the second part of the environment `{WithArrows}` and the environment `{DispWithArrows}`.

```
988 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_post_halign:
```

The command `\WithArrowsRightX` is not used by `witharrows`. It's only a convenience given to the user.

```

989  {
990    \cs_set:Npn \WithArrowsRightX { \g_@@_right_x_dim }

```

We use `\normalbaselines` of plain-TeX because we have used `\spread@equation` (of `amsmath` or defined directly if `amsmath` is not loaded) and you don't want `\spread@equation` to have effects in the labels of the arrows.

```
991 \normalbaselines
```

If there is really arrows in the environment, we draw the arrows.

```

992 \int_compare:nNnT \g_@@_arrow_int > 0
993  {

```

If there is only one arrow, the options `group` and `groups` do not really make sense and it will be quicker to act as if we were in option `i` (moreover, it allows the option `xoffset` for the unique arrow).

```

994 \int_compare:nNnT \g_@@_arrow_int = 1
995  {
996      \int_compare:nNnT \l_@@_pos_arrow_int > 5
997      { \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int 5 }
998  }
999  
```

```
\@@_scan_arrows:
1000 }
```

We will execute the code specified in the option `code-after`, after some settings.

```

1001 \group_begin:
1002   \tikzset { every-picture / .style = @@_standard }

```

The command `\WithArrowsNbLines` is not used by `witharrows`. It's only a convenience given to the user.

```
1003 \cs_set:Npn \WithArrowsNbLines { \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int }
```

The command `\MultiArrow` is available in `code-after`, and we have a special version of `\Arrow`, called “`\Arrow in code-after`” in the documentation.<sup>35</sup>

```
1004     \cs_set_eq:NN \MultiArrow \l__MultiArrow_nn
1005     \cs_set_eq:cN \l__command_name_str \l__Arrow_code_after
1006     \bool_set_true:N \l__in_code_after_bool
1007     \l__code_after_tl
1008 \group_end:
```

We update the position-in-the-tree. First, we drop the last component and then we increment the last element.

```
1009     \seq_gpop_right:NN \g__position_in_the_tree_seq \l_tmpa_tl
1010     \seq_gpop_right:NN \g__position_in_the_tree_seq \l_tmpa_tl
1011     \seq_gput_right:Nx \g__position_in_the_tree_seq
1012     { \int_eval:n { \l_tmpa_tl + 1 } }
```

We update the value of the counter `\g__last_env_int`. This counter is used only by the user function `\WithArrowsLastEnv`.

```
1013     \int_compare:nNnT { \seq_count:N \g__position_in_the_tree_seq } = 1
1014     { \int_gincr:N \g__last_env_int }
```

Finally, we restore the previous values of the counters `\g__arrow_int`, `\g__col_int` and `\g__static_col_int`. It is recalled that we manage four stacks in order to be able to do such a restoration.

```
1015     \seq_gpop_right:NN \g__arrow_int_seq \l_tmpa_tl
1016     \int_gset:Nn \g__arrow_int \l_tmpa_tl
1017     \seq_gpop_right:NN \g__line_int_seq \l_tmpa_tl
1018     \int_gset:Nn \g__line_int \l_tmpa_tl
1019     \seq_gpop_right:NN \g__col_int_seq \l_tmpa_tl
1020     \int_gset:Nn \g__col_int \l_tmpa_tl
1021     \seq_gpop_right:NN \g__static_col_int_seq \l_tmpa_tl
1022     \int_gset:Nn \g__static_col_int \l_tmpa_tl
1023 }
```

That's the end of the command `\@_post_halign`.

### 12.9.5 The command of end of row

We give now the definition of `\@_cr`: which is the definition of `\` in an environment `{WithArrows}`. The two commands `\group_align_safe_begin`: and `\group_align_safe_end`: are specifically designed for this purpose: test the token that follows in an `\halign` structure.

First, we remove an eventual token `*` (just after the `\`: there should not be space between the two) since the commands `\` and `\*\` are equivalent in an environment `{WithArrows}` (an environment `{WithArrows}`, like an environment `{aligned}` of `amsmath`, is always unbreakable).

```
1024 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@_cr:
1025 {
1026     \scan_stop:
```

We try to detect some `\omit` (as of now, an `\omit` in the last column is not detected).

```
1027     \int_compare:nNnF \g__col_int = \g__static_col_int
1028     { \@_error:n { omit~probably~used } }
1029     \prg_replicate:nn { \l__nb_cols_int - \g__static_col_int } { & { } }
1030     \group_align_safe_begin:
1031     \peek_meaning_remove:NTF * \@_cr_i: \@_cr_i:
1032 }
```

---

<sup>35</sup>As of now, `\MultiArrow` has no option, and that's why its internal name is a name of L3 with the signature `:nn` whereas `\Arrow in code-after` provides options and has the name of a function defined with `\NewDocumentCommand`.

Then, we peek the next token to see if it's a [. In this case, the command \\ has an optional argument which is the vertical skip (=glue) to put.

```
1033 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_cr_i:
1034   { \peek_meaning:NTF [ \@@_cr_ii: { \@@_cr_ii: [ \c_zero_dim ] } }
```

Now, we test if the next token is the token \end. Indeed, we want to test if the following tokens are \end{WithArrows} (or \end{DispWithArrows}, etc). In this case, we raise an error because the user must not put \\ at the end of its alignment.

```
1035 (*LaTeX)
1036 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_cr_ii: [ #1 ]
1037   {
1038     \peek_remove_spaces:n
1039     {
1040       \peek_meaning:NTF \end
1041       {
1042         \@@_cr_iii:n { #1 }
```

The analyse of the argument of the token \end must be after the \group\_align\_safe\_end: which is the beginning of \@@\_cr\_iii:n.

```
1043           \@@_analyze_end:Nn
1044         }
1045         { \@@_cr_iii:n { #1 } }
1046       }
1047     }

1048 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_cr_iii:n #1
1049 </LaTeX>
1050 (*plain-TeX)
1051 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_cr_ii: [ #1 ]
1052 </plain-TeX>
1053 {
1054   \group_align_safe_end:
```

For the environment {DispWithArrows}, the behaviour of \\ is different because we add the last column which is the column for the tag (number of the equation). Even if there is no tag, this column is used for the v-nodes.<sup>36</sup>

```
1055 \bool_if:NT \l_@@_in_DispatchWithArrows_bool
```

At this stage, we know that we have a tag to put if (and only if) the value of \l\_@@\_tags\_clist is the comma list all (only one element). Maybe, previously, the value of \l\_@@\_tags\_clist was, for example, 1, last (which means that only the first line and the last line must be tagged). However, in this case, the comparison with the number of line has be done before and, now, if we are in a line to tag, the value of \l\_@@\_tags\_clist is all.

```
1056   {
1057   (*LaTeX)
1058     \clist_if_in:NnTF \l_@@_tags_clist { all }
1059   }
```

Here, we can't use \refstepcounter{equation} because if the user has issued a \tag command, we have to use \l\_@@\_tag\_t1 and not \theequation. That's why we have to do the job done by \refstepcounter manually.

First, the incrementation of the counter (potentially).

```
1060   \tl_if_empty:NT \l_@@_tag_t1 { \int_gincr:N \c@equation }
```

We store in \g\_tmpa\_t1 the tag we will have to compose at the end of the line. We use a global variable because we will use it in the *next* cell (after the &).

```
1061   \cs_gset:Npx \g_tmpa_t1
1062     { \tl_if_empty:NTF \l_@@_tag_t1 \theequation \l_@@_tag_t1 }
```

---

<sup>36</sup>The v-nodes are used to compute the abscissa of the right margin, used by the option wrap-lines.

It's possible to put several labels for the same line (it's not possible in the environments of `amsmath`). That's why the different labels of a same line are stored in a sequence `\l_@@_labels_seq`.

```
1063     \seq_if_empty:NF \l_@@_labels_seq
1064         {
```

Now, we do the job done by `\refstepcounter` and by the redefinitions of `\refstepcounter` done by some packages (the incrementation of the counter has been done yet).

First an action which is in the definition of `\refstepcounter`.

```
1065     \cs_set:Npx \currentlabel { \p@equation \g_tmpa_tl }
```

Then, an action done by `hyperref` in its redefinition of `\refstepcounter`.

```
1066     \IfPackageLoadedTF { hyperref }
1067         {
1068             % the following line is probably pointless (2022/05/16)
1069             % \str_set:Nn \This@name { equation }
1070             \hyper@refstepcounter { equation }
1071         }
1072     { }
```

Then, an action done by `cleveref` in its redefinition of `\refstepcounter`. The package `cleveref` creates in the `aux` file a command `\cref@currentlabel` similar to `\@currentlabel` but with more informations.

```
1073     \IfPackageLoadedTF { cleveref }
1074         {
1075             \cref@constructprefix { equation } \cref@result
1076             \protected@edef \cref@currentlabel
1077                 {
1078                     [
1079                         \cs_if_exist:NTF \cref@equation@alias
1080                             \cref@equation@alias
1081                             { equation }
1082                         ]
1083                         [ \arabic { equation } ] [ \cref@result ]
1084                         \p@equation \g_tmpa_tl
1085                     }
1086                 }
1087             { }
```

Now, we can issue the command `\label` (some packages may have redefined `\label`, for example `typedref`) for each item in the sequence of the labels (it's possible with `witharrows` to put several labels to the same line and that's why the labels are in the sequence `\l_@@_labels_seq`).

```
1088     \seq_map_function:NN \l_@@_labels_seq \@@_old_label
1089     }
```

We save the booleans `\l_@@_tag_star_bool` and `\l_@@_qedhere_bool` because they will be used in the *next* cell (after the `&`). We recall that the cells of a `\halign` are TeX groups.

```
1090     \@@_save:N \l_@@_tag_star_bool
1091     \@@_save:N \l_@@_qedhere_bool
1092     \bool_if:NT \l_@@_tag_next_line_bool
1093         {
1094             \openup -\jot
1095             \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_tag_next_line_bool
1096             \notag \\ &
1097         }
1098     &
1099     \@@_restore:N \l_@@_tag_star_bool
1100     \@@_restore:N \l_@@_qedhere_bool
1101     \bool_if:NT \l_@@_qedhere_bool
1102         { \hbox_overlap_left:n \@@_qedhere_i: }
1103     \cs_set_eq:NN \theequation \g_tmpa_tl
1104     \bool_if:NT \l_@@_tag_star_bool
1105         { \cs_set_eq:NN \tagform@ \prg_do_nothing: }
```

We use `\@eqnnum` (we recall that there are two definitions of `\@eqnnum`, a standard definition and another, loaded if the class option `leqno` is used). However, of course, the position of the v-node is not the same whether the option `leqno` is used or not. That's here that we use the flag `\c_@@_leqno_bool`.

```

1106         \hbox_overlap_left:n
1107         {
1108             \bool_if:NF \c_@@_leqno_bool
1109             {
1110                 \pgfpicture
1111                 \pgfrememberpicturepositiononpagetrue
1112                 \pgfcoordinate
1113                     { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - v }
1114                     \pgfpointorigin
1115                 \endpgfpicture
1116             }
1117             \quad
1118             \@eqnnum
1119         }
1120         \bool_if:NT \c_@@_leqno_bool
1121         {
1122             \pgfpicture
1123             \pgfrememberpicturepositiononpagetrue
1124             \pgfcoordinate
1125                 { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - v }
1126                 \pgfpointorigin
1127             \endpgfpicture
1128         }
1129     }
1130     {
1131         \c_@@_save:N \l_@@_qedhere_bool
1132     
```

 $\langle /LaTeX \rangle$ 

```

1133     &
1134     \langle *LaTeX \rangle
1135         \c_@@_restore:N \l_@@_qedhere_bool
1136         \bool_if:NT \l_@@_qedhere_bool
1137             { \hbox_overlap_left:n \c_@@_qedhere_i: }
1138     
```

 $\langle /LaTeX \rangle$ 

```

1139         \pgfpicture
1140         \pgfrememberpicturepositiononpagetrue
1141         \pgfcoordinate
1142             { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - v }
1143             \pgfpointorigin
1144         \endpgfpicture
1145     
```

 $\langle *LaTeX \rangle$ 

```

1146     }
1147     
```

 $\langle /LaTeX \rangle$ 

```

1148     }
1149     \dim_compare:nNnT { #1 } < \c_zero_dim
1150         { \c_@@_error:n { option~of~cr~negative } }
1151
1152     \cr
1153     \noalign
1154     {
1155         \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim { \dim_max:nn { #1 } \c_zero_dim }
1156         \skip_vertical:N \l_tmpa_dim
1157         \skip_vertical:N \l_@@_interline_skip
1158         \scan_stop:
1159     }
1160 }
```

According to the documentation of L3, the previous addition in “`#1 + \l_@@_interline_skip`” is really an addition of skips (=glues).

The following command will be used when, after a `\`` (and its optional arguments) there is a `\end`. You want to known if this is the end of the environment `{WithArrows}` (or `{DispWithArrows}`, etc.)

because, in this case, we will explain that the environment must not be ended by `\`. If it is not the case, that means it's a classical situation of LaTeX environments not correctly imbricated and there will be a LaTeX error.

```

1161 <*LaTeX>
1162 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_analyze_end:Nn #1 #2
1163 {
1164     \str_if_eq:VnT \l_@@_type_env_str { #2 }
1165     {
1166         \@@_error:n { newline-at-the-end-of-env }
1167         \group_begin:
1168         \globaldefs = 1
1169         \@@_msg_redirect_name:nn { newline-at-the-end-of-env } { none }
1170         \group_end:
1171     }

```

We reput in the stream the `\end{...}` we have extracted.

```

1172     \end { #2 }
1173 }
1174 </LaTeX>

```

### 12.9.6 The environment {DispWithArrows}

For the environment `{DispWithArrows}`, the general form of the construction is of the type:

`\[\vtop{\halign to \displaywidth {...}}\]`

The purpose of the `\vtop` is to have an environment unbreakable.

However, if we are juste after an item of a LaTeX list or at the beginning of a `{minipage}`, the construction is slightly different:

`\[\vtop{\halign to \linewidth {...}}\]`

The boolean `\l_@@_in_label_or_minipage_bool` will be raised if we are just after a `\item` of a list of LaTeX or at the beginning of a `{minipage}`.

```

1175 <*LaTeX>
1176 \bool_new:N \l_@@_in_label_or_minipage_bool
1177 </LaTeX>
1178 <*LaTeX>
1179 \NewDocumentEnvironment { DispWithArrows } { ! d < > ! O { } }
1180 </LaTeX>
1181 <*plain-TeX>
1182 \cs_new_protected:Npn \DispWithArrows
1183 {
1184     \group_begin:
1185     \peek_meaning:NTF <
1186         { \DispWithArrows_i }
1187         { \DispWithArrows_i < \c_novalue_tl > }
1188     }
1189 \cs_new_protected:Npn \DispWithArrows_i < #1 >
1190 {
1191     \peek_meaning:NTF [
1192         { \DispWithArrows_ii < #1 > }
1193         { \DispWithArrows_ii < #1 > [ ] }
1194     }
1195 \cs_new_protected:Npn \DispWithArrows_ii < #1 > [ #2 ]
1196 </plain-TeX>
1197 {
1198     \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_in_DispatchWithArrows_bool
1199 <*plain-TeX>
1200     \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_type_env_str
1201     \str_set:Nn \l_@@_type_env_str { DispWithArrows }
1202 </plain-TeX>

```

Since the version 1.16 of witharrows, no space is added between an \item of a LaTeX list and an environment {DispWithArrows} except with the option standard-behaviour-with-items stored in the boolean \l\_@@\_sbwi\_bool. We have to know if we are just after an \item and this information will be stored in \l\_@@\_in\_label\_or\_minipage\_bool. We have to do this test quickly after the beginning of the environment (in particular, because it must be done before the execution of the code-before<sup>37</sup>).

```

1203 (*LaTeX)
1204   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_sbwi_bool
1205   {
1206     \legacy_if:nT { @inlabel }
1207     { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_in_label_or_minipage_bool }
1208     \legacy_if:nT { @minipage }
1209     { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_in_label_or_minipage_bool }
1210   }
1211 
```

If mathtools has been loaded with the option showonlyrefs, we disable the code of mathtools for the option showonlyrefs with the command \MT\_showonlyrefs\_false: (it will be reactivated at the end of the environment).

```

1212 (*LaTeX)
1213   \IfPackageLoadedTF { mathtools }
1214   {
1215     \MH_if_boolean:nT { show_only_refs }
1216     {
1217       \MT_showonlyrefs_false:

```

However, we have to re-raise the flag {show\_only\_refs} of mhsetup because it has been switched off by \MT\_showonlyrefs\_false: and we will use it in the code of the new version of \label.

```

1218       \MH_set_boolean_T:n { show_only_refs }
1219     }
1220   }
1221 
```

An action done by typedref in its redefinition of \refstepcounter. The command \sr@name is a prefix added to the name of the label by the redefinition of \label done by typedref.

```

1222   \IfPackageLoadedTF { typedref }
1223   {
1224     \str_set:Nn \sr@name { equation }

```

The command \intertext@ is a command of amsmath which loads the definition of \intertext.

```

1225   \IfPackageLoadedTF { amsmath } { \intertext@ } { }
1226 
```

If subequations is used, we encapsulate the environment in an environment {subequations} of amsmath.

```

1229 (*LaTeX)
1230   \bool_if:NT \l_@@_subequations_bool { \begin { subequations } }
1231 
```

```

1232   \tl_if_eq:NNF \l_@@_left_brace_tl \c_novalue_t1
1233   {

```

We compute the value of the width of the left delimiter.

```

1234   \hbox_set:Nn \l_tmpa_box
1235   {

```

---

<sup>37</sup>The code-before is not meant to contains typesetting material. However, it may contain, for example, a {tikzpicture} with options overlay and remember picture in order to draw nodes under some elements of the environment {DispWithArrows}.

Even if the default value of `\nulldelimiterspace` is 1.2 pt, we take it into account.

```

1236     \group_begin:
1237     \dim_zero:N \nulldelimiterspace
1238     \c_math_toggle_token
1239     \left \l_@@_replace_left_brace_by_tl \vcenter to 1 cm { } \right.
1240     \c_math_toggle_token
1241     \group_end:
1242   }
1243 \dim_zero_new:N \l_@@_delim_wd_dim
1244 \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_delim_wd_dim { \box_wd:N \l_tmpa_box }
1245 \box_clear_new:N \l_@@_left_brace_box
1246 \hbox_set:Nn \l_@@_left_brace_box
1247 {
1248   \group_begin:
1249     \cs_set_eq:NN \label \l_@@_old_label
1250     \c_math_toggle_token
1251     \bool_if:NT \l_@@_displaystyle_bool \displaystyle
1252     \l_@@_left_brace_tl
1253   {
1254     \c_math_toggle_token
1255   }
1256   \group_end:
1257 }

```

The token list `\l_@@_tag_tl` will contain the argument of the command `\tag`.

```

1258 (*LaTeX)
1259   \tl_clear_new:N \l_@@_tag_tl
1260
1261   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_qedhere_bool

```

The boolean `\l_@@_tag_star_bool` will be raised if the user uses the command `\tag` with a star.

```

1261   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_tag_star_bool
1262 
```

The construction is not exactly the same whether we are just after an `\item` of a LaTeX list or not.

We know if we are after an `\item` thanks to the boolean `\l_@@_in_label_or_minipage_bool`.

```

1266 (*plain-TeX)
1267   \dim_zero_new:N \linewidth
1268   \dim_set_eq:NN \linewidth \displaywidth
1269 
```

```

1270 (*LaTeX)
1271   \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_in_label_or_minipage_bool
1272   {
1273     \noindent % added in v. 2.6d
1274     \c_math_toggle_token
1275   }
1276   {
1277 
```

We don't use `\[` of LaTeX because some extensions, like `autonum`, do a redefinition of `\[`. However, we put the following lines which are in the definition of `\[` even though they are in case of misuse.

```

1278   \if_mode_vertical:
1279   \nointerlineskip
1280   \hbox_to_wd:nn { .6 \linewidth } { }
1281   \fi:
1282   \c_math_toggle_token \c_math_toggle_token
1283 
```

```

1284 }
1285 
```

```

1286   \dim_zero_new:N \l_@@_linewidth_dim
1287 (*LaTeX)
1288   \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_in_label_or_minipage_bool
1289     { \dim_set_eq:NN \l_@@_linewidth_dim \linewidth }
1290     { \dim_set_eq:NN \l_@@_linewidth_dim \displaywidth }
1291 (/LaTeX)
1292 (*plain-TeX)
1293   \dim_set_eq:NN \l_@@_linewidth_dim \displaywidth
1294 (/plain-TeX)
1295   \box_clear_new:N \l_@@_halign_box
1296   \setbox \l_@@_halign_box \vtop \bgroup
1297   \tabskip =
1298   \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_fleqn_bool
1299     \c_zero_skip
1300     { 0 pt plus 1000 pt minus 1000 pt }

```

The command `\spread@equation` is the command used by `amsmath` in the beginning of an alignment to fix the interline. When used, it becomes no-op. However, it's possible to use `witharrows` without `amsmath` since we have redefined `\spread@equation` (if it is not defined yet).

```

1301 \spread@equation
1302 \@@_construct_halign:
1303 \tabskip = 0 pt plus 1000 pt minus 1000 pt
1304 &

```

If the user tries to use more columns than the length of the format, we have to raise an error. However, the error won't be in the next column which is the columns for the labels of the equations. The error will be after... and it must be after. That means that we must not have an error in the next column simply because we are not in math mode. That's why this column, even if it is for the labels, is in math mode.

```

1305 $ ## $
1306 \tabskip = \c_zero_skip
1307 &&
1308 \@@_fatal:n { Too-much-columns-in-DispWithArrows }
1309 \bool_if:nT \c_false_bool { ## }
1310 \cr
1311 }

```

We begin the second part of the environment `{DispWithArrows}`.

```

1312 (*plain-TeX)
1313 \cs_new_protected:Npn \endDispWithArrows
1314 (/plain-TeX)
1315 {
1316 (*LaTeX)
1317 \clist_if_in:NnT \l_@@_tags_clist { last }
1318   { \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { all } }
1319 (/LaTeX)
1320 \\

```

The following `\egroup` is for the `\halign`.

```

1321 \egroup
1322 \unskip \unpenalty \unskip \unpenalty
1323 \box_set_to_last:N \l_tmpa_box
1324 \nointerlineskip
1325 \box_use:N \l_tmpa_box
1326 \dim_gzero_new:N \g_@@_alignment_dim
1327 \dim_gset:Nn \g_@@_alignment_dim { \box_wd:N \l_tmpa_box }
1328 \box_clear_new:N \l_@@_new_box
1329 \hbox_set:Nn \l_@@_new_box { \hbox_unpack_drop:N \l_tmpa_box }
1330 \dim_compare:nNnT
1331   { \box_wd:N \l_@@_new_box } < \g_@@_alignment_dim
1332   { \dim_gset:Nn \g_@@_alignment_dim { \box_wd:N \l_@@_new_box } }

```

The \egroup is for the box \l\_@@\_halign\_box.

```

1333 \egroup
1334 \tl_if_eq:NNTF \l_@@_left_brace_tl \c_novalue_tl
1335 { \box_use_drop:N \l_@@_halign_box }
1336 {
1337     \hbox_to_wd:nn \l_@@_linewidth_dim
1338     {
1339         \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_fleqn_bool
1340         { \skip_horizontal:N \l_@@_mathindent_skip }
1341         \hfil
1342         \hbox_to_wd:nn \g_@@_alignment_dim
1343         {
1344             \box_use_drop:N \l_@@_left_brace_box

```

Here, you should use \box\_ht\_plus\_dp:N when TeXLive 2021 will be available on Overleaf.

```

1345 \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim
1346 {
1347     \box_ht:N \l_@@_halign_box
1348     + \box_dp:N \l_@@_halign_box
1349 }
1350 \group_begin:
1351 \dim_zero:N \nulldelimerspace
1352 \c_math_toggle_token
1353 \left \l_@@_replace_left_brace_by_tl
1354     \vcenter to \l_tmpa_dim { \vfil }
1355 \right.
1356 \c_math_toggle_token
1357 \group_end:
1358 \hfil
1359 }
1360 \hfil
1361 }
1362 \skip_horizontal:N -\l_@@_linewidth_dim
1363 \vcenter { \box_use_drop:N \l_@@_halign_box }
1364 }

```

We compute the dimension \g\_@@\_right\_x\_dim. As a first approximation, \g\_@@\_right\_x\_dim is the *x*-value of the right side of the current composition box. In fact, we must take into account the potential labels of the equations. That's why we compute \g\_@@\_right\_x\_dim with the v-nodes of each row specifically built in this goal. \g\_@@\_right\_x\_dim is the minimal value of the *x*-value of these nodes.

```

1365 \dim_gzero_new:N \g_@@_right_x_dim
1366 \dim_gset_eq:NN \g_@@_right_x_dim \c_max_dim
1367 \pgfpicture
1368     \pgfrememberpicturepositiononpagetrue
1369     \int_step_variable:nNn \g_@@_line_int \l_tmpa_int
1370     {
1371         \cs_if_free:cTF
1372             { pgf @ sh @ ns @ wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \l_tmpa_int - v }
1373             { \C@_fatal:n { Inexistent~v-node } }
1374         {
1375             \pgfpointanchor
1376                 { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \l_tmpa_int - v }
1377                 { center }
1378             \dim_compare:nNnT \pgf@x < \g_@@_right_x_dim
1379             { \dim_gset_eq:NN \g_@@_right_x_dim \pgf@x }
1380         }
1381     }
1382 \endpgfpicture

```

The code in \C@\_post\_halign: is common to {WithArrows} and {DispWithArrows}.

```

1383 \C@_post_halign:

```

If mathtools has been loaded with the option `showonlyrefs`, we reactivate the code of mathtools for the option `showonlyrefs` with the command `\MT_showonlyrefs_true:` (it has been deactivated in the beginning of the environment).

```

1384  {*LaTeX}
1385  \IfPackageLoadedTF { mathtools }
1386  { \MH_if_boolean:nT { show_only_refs } \MT_showonlyrefs_true: }
1387  { }
1388  \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_in_label_or_minipage_bool
1389  {
1390      \c_math_toggle_token
1391      \skip_vertical:N \belowdisplayskip
1392  }
1393  { \c_math_toggle_token \c_math_toggle_token }
1394  
```

```

1395  {*plain-TeX}
1396      \c_math_toggle_token \c_math_toggle_token
1397  
```

```

1398  {*LaTeX}
1399  \bool_if:NT \l_@@_subequations_bool { \end { subequations } }

```

If the option `footnote` or the option `footnotehyper` is used, then we extract the footnotes with an environment `{savenotes}` (of the package `footnote` or the package `footnotehyper`).

```

1400  \bool_if:NT \c_@@_footnote_bool { \end { savenotes } }
1401  
```

```

1402  
```

```

1403      \group_end:
1404  
```

```

1405  
```

```

1406      \ignorespacesafterend
1407  
```

```

1408  }

```

With the environment `{DispWithArrows*}`, the equations are not numbered. We don't put `\begin{DispWithArrows}` and `\end{DispWithArrows}` because there is a `\@currenvir` in some error messages.

```

1409  {*LaTeX}
1410  \NewDocumentEnvironment { DispWithArrows* } { }
1411  {
1412      \WithArrowsOptions { notag }
1413      \DispWithArrows
1414  }
1415  \endDispWithArrows
1416 
```

## 12.10 The commands `\tag`, `\notag`, `\label`, `\tagnextline` and `\qedhere` for `{DispWithArrows}`

Some commands are allowed only in the last column of the environment `{DispWithArrows}`. We write a command `\@@_if_in_last_col_of_disp:Nn` to execute this command only if we are in the last column. If we are in another column, an error is raised. The first argument of `\@@_if_in_last_col_of_disp:Nn` is the name of the command used in the error message and the second is the code to execute.

```

1417  \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_if_in_last_col_of_disp:Nn #1 #2
1418  {
1419      \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_in_WithArrows_bool
1420      { \@@_error:nn { Not~allowed~in~WithArrows } { #1 } }
1421      {
1422          \int_compare:nNnTF \g_@@_col_int < \l_@@_nb_cols_int
1423          { \@@_error:nn { Not~allowed~in~DispWithArrows } { #1 } }

```

```

1424     { #2 }
1425   }
1426 }
```

The command `\@@_notag:` will be linked to the command `\notag` in the environments `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`.

```

1427 (*LaTeX)
1428 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_notag:
1429   { \@@_if_in_last_col_of_disp:Nn \notag { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_tags_clist } }
```

The command `\@@_nonumber:` will be linked to the command `\nonumber` in the environments `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`.

```

1430 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_nonumber:
1431   { \@@_if_in_last_col_of_disp:Nn \nonumber { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_tags_clist } }
```

The command `\@@_tag` will be linked to `\tag` in `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`. We do the definition with `\NewDocumentCommand` because this command has a starred version.

```

1432 \NewDocumentCommand \@@_tag { s m }
1433   {
1434     \@@_if_in_last_col_of_disp:Nn \tag
1435     {
1436       \tl_if_empty:NF \l_@@_tag_tl
1437         { \@@_error:nn { Multiple~tags } { #2 } }
1438       \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { all }
1439       \IfPackageLoadedTF { mathtools }
1440       {
1441         \MH_if_boolean:nT { show_only_refs }
1442         {
1443           \MH_if_boolean:nF { show_manual_tags }
1444             { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_tags_clist }
1445         }
1446       }
1447     }
1448     \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_tag_tl { #2 }
1449     \bool_set:Nn \l_@@_tag_star_bool { #1 }
```

The starred version `\tag*` can't be used if `amsmath` has not been loaded because this version does the job by deactivating the command `\tagform@` inserted by `amsmath` in the (two versions of the) command `\eqnnum`.<sup>38</sup>

```

1450   \bool_if:nT { #1 }
1451   {
1452     \IfPackageLoadedTF { amsmath }
1453     {
1454       \@@_error:n { tag*-without-amsmath }
1455     }
1456   }
1457 }
```

The command `\@@_label:n` will be linked to `\label` in the environments `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`. In these environments, it's possible to put several labels for the same line (it's not possible in the environments of `amsmath`). That's why we store the different labels of a same line in a sequence `\l_@@_labels_seq`.

```

1458 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_label:n #1
1459   {
1460     \@@_if_in_last_col_of_disp:Nn \label
1461     {
1462       \seq_if_empty:NF \l_@@_labels_seq
1463       {
```

---

<sup>38</sup>There are two versions of `\eqnnum`, a standard version and a version for the option `leqno`.

```

1464         \IfPackageLoadedTF { cleverref }
1465             { \@@_error:n { Multiple-labels-with~cleverref } }
1466             { \@@_error:n { Multiple-labels } }
1467         }
1468     \seq_put_right:Nn \l_@@_labels_seq { #1 }
1469     \IfPackageLoadedTF { mathtools }
1470     {
1471         \MH_if_boolean:nT { show_only_refs }
1472         {
1473             \cs_if_exist:cTF { MT_r_#1 }
1474                 { \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { all } }
1475                 { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_tags_clist }
1476         }
1477     }
1478     {
1479     \IfPackageLoadedTF { autonum }
1480     {
1481         \cs_if_exist:cTF { autonum@#1Referenced }
1482             { \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { all } }
1483             { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_tags_clist }
1484     }
1485     {
1486     }
1487 }
1488 }
```

The command `\@@_tagnextline:` will be linked to `\tagnextline` in `{DispWithArrows}`.

```

1488 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_tagnextline:
1489 {
1490     \@@_if_in_last_col_of_disp:Nn \tagnextline
1491         { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_tag_next_line_bool }
1492 }
```

The environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}` are compliant with the command `\qedhere` of `amsthm`. However, this compatibility requires a special version of `\qedhere`.

This special version is called `\@@_qedhere:` and will be linked with `\qedhere` in the last column of the environment `{DispWithArrows}` (only if the package `amsthm` has been loaded). `\@@_qedhere:` raises the boolean `\l_@@_qedhere_bool`.

```

1493 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_qedhere: { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_qedhere_bool }
1494 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_set_qedhere: { \cs_set_eq:NN \qedhere \@@_qedhere: }
```

In the last column of the `\halign` of `{DispWithArrows}` (column of the labels, that is to say the numbers of the equations), a command `\@@_qedhere_i:` will be issued if the flag `\l_@@_qedhere_bool` has been raised. The code of this command is an adaptation of the code of `\qedhere` in `amsthm`.

```

1495 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_qedhere_i:
1496 {
1497     \group_begin:
1498         \cs_set_eq:NN \qed \qedsymbol
```

The line `\cs_set_eq:NN \qed@elt \setQED@elt` is a preparation for an action on the QED stack. Despite its form, the instruction `\QED@stack` executes an operation on the stack. This operation prints the QED symbol and nullify the top of the stack.

```

1499     \cs_set_eq:NN \qed@elt \setQED@elt
1500     \QED@stack \relax \relax
1501     \group_end:
1502 }
1503 
```

## 12.11 We draw the arrows

The arrows are divided in groups. There are two reasons for this division.

- If the option `group` or the option `groups` is used, all the arrows of a group are drawn on a same vertical at an abscissa of `\l_@@_x_dim`.

- For aesthetic reasons, the starting point of all the starting arrows of a group is raised upwards by the value `\l_@@_start_adjust_dim`. Idem for the ending arrows.

If the option `group` is used (`\l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 7`), we scan the arrows twice: in the first step we only compute the value of `\l_@@_x_dim` for the whole group, and, in the second step (`\l_@@_pos_arrow_int` is set to 8), we divide the arrows in groups (for the vertical adjustement) and we actually draw the arrows.

```

1504 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_scan_arrows:
1505 {
1506     \group_begin:
1507     \int_compare:nNnT \l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 7
1508     {
1509         \@@_scan_arrows_i:
1510         \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int 8
1511     }
1512     \@@_scan_arrows_i:
1513     \group_end:
1514 }

1515 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_scan_arrows_i:
1516 {

```

`\l_@@_first_arrow_of_group_int` will be the first arrow of the current group.

`\l_@@_first_line_of_group_int` will be the first line involved in the group of arrows (equal to the initial line of the first arrow of the group because the option `jump` is always positive).

`\l_@@_first_arrows_seq` will be the list of the arrows of the group starting at the first line of the group (we may have several arrows starting from the same line). We have to know all these arrows because of the adjustement by `\l_@@_start_adjust_dim`.

`\l_@@_last_line_of_group_int` will be the last line involved in the group (impossible to guess in advance).

`\l_@@_last_arrows_seq` will be the list of all the arrows of the group ending at the last line of the group (impossible to guess in advance).

```

1517 \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_first_arrow_of_group_int
1518 \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_first_line_of_group_int
1519 \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_last_line_of_group_int
1520 \seq_clear_new:N \l_@@_first_arrows_seq
1521 \seq_clear_new:N \l_@@_last_arrows_seq

```

The boolean `\l_@@_new_group_bool` is a switch that we will use to indicate that a group is finished (and the lines of that group have to be drawn). This boolean is not directly connected to the option `new-group` of an individual arrow.

```
1522 \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_new_group_bool
```

We begin a loop over all the arrows of the environment. Inside this loop, if a group is finished, we will draw the arrows of that group.

```

1523 \int_set:Nn \l_@@_arrow_int 1
1524 \int_until_do:nNnn \l_@@_arrow_int > \g_@@_arrow_int
1525 {

```

We extract from the property list of the current arrow the fields “initial”, “final”, “status” and “input-line”. For the two former, we have to do conversions to integers.

```

1526 \prop_get:cnN
1527     { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
1528     { initial } \l_tmpa_tl
1529     \int_set:Nn \l_@@_initial_int \l_tmpa_tl
1530     \prop_get:cnN
1531     { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
1532     { final } \l_tmpa_tl
1533     \int_set:Nn \l_@@_final_int \l_tmpa_tl

```

```

1534     \prop_get:cnN
1535         { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
1536         { status } \l_@@_status_arrow_str
1537 \prop_get:cnN
1538     { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
1539     { input-line } \l_@@_input_line_str

```

We recall that, after the construction of the `\halign`, `\g_@@_line_int` is the total number of lines of the environment. Therefore, the conditionnal `\l_@@_final_int > \g_@@_line_int` tests whether an arrow arrives after the last line of the environment. In this case, we raise an error (except in the second step of treatment for the option `group`). The arrow will be completely ignored, even for the computation of `\l_@@_x_dim`.

```

1540     \int_compare:nNnTF \l_@@_final_int > \g_@@_line_int
1541     {
1542         \int_compare:nNnF \l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 8
1543         { \@@_error:n { Too-few-lines-for-an-arrow } }
1544     }
1545     \@@_treat_an_arrow_in_scan:

```

Incrementation of the index of the loop (and end of the loop).

```

1546     \int_incr:N \l_@@_arrow_int
1547 }

```

After the last arrow of the environment, we have to draw the last group of arrows. If we are in option `group` and in the first step of treatment (`\l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 7`), we don't draw because, in the first step, we don't draw anything. If there is no arrow in the group, we don't draw (this situation occurs when all the arrows of the potential group arrive after the last line of the environment).

```

1548 \bool_if:nT
1549 {
1550     ! \int_compare_p:nNn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 7
1551     &&
1552     \int_compare_p:nNn \l_@@_first_arrow_of_group_int > 0
1553 }
1554 { \@@_draw_arrows:nn \l_@@_first_arrow_of_group_int \g_@@_arrow_int }
1555 }

```

The following command is only for the lisibility of the code. It's used only once. Its name may be misleading. Indeed, it treats an arrow in the scan but it *may* trigger the construction of all arrows of a group if it detects that a group has just been completed (with `\@@_draw_arrows:nn`)

```

1556 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_treat_an_arrow_in_scan:
1557 {

```

We test whether the previous arrow was in fact the last arrow of a group. In this case, we have to draw all the arrows of that group, except if we are with the option `group` and in the first step of treatment (`\l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 7`).

```

1558 \bool_lazy_and:nnT
1559 { \int_compare_p:nNn \l_@@_arrow_int > 1 }
1560 {
1561     \bool_lazy_or_p:nn
1562     {
1563         \bool_lazy_and_p:nn
1564         {
1565             \int_compare_p:nNn
1566             \l_@@_initial_int > \l_@@_last_line_of_group_int
1567         }
1568         { \bool_not_p:n { \int_compare_p:nNn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 7 } }
1569     }
1570     { \str_if_eq_p:Vn \l_@@_status_arrow_str { new-group } }
1571 }
1572 {

```

```

1573 \int_compare:nNnF \l_@@_first_arrow_of_group_int = \c_zero_int
1574 {
1575     \@@_draw_arrows:nn
1576     \l_@@_first_arrow_of_group_int
1577     { \l_@@_arrow_int - 1 }
1578 }
1579 \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_new_group_bool
1580 }
```

The flag `\l_@@_new_group_bool` indicates if we have to begin a new group of arrows. In fact, we have to begin a new group in three circonstances: if we are at the first arrow of the environment (that's why the flag is raised before the beginning of the loop), if we have just finished a group (that's why the flag is raised in the previous conditionnal, for topological reasons or if the previous arrows had the status “new-group”). At the beginning of a group, we have to initialize the following variables: `\l_@@_first_arrow_int`, `\l_@@_first_line_of_group_int`, `\l_@@_last_line_of_group`, `\l_@@_first_arrows_seq`, `\l_@@_last_arrows_seq`.

```

1581 \bool_if:nTF \l_@@_new_group_bool
1582 {
1583     \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_new_group_bool
1584     \int_set_eq:NN \l_@@_first_arrow_of_group_int \l_@@_arrow_int
1585     \int_set_eq:NN \l_@@_first_line_of_group_int \l_@@_initial_int
1586     \int_set_eq:NN \l_@@_last_line_of_group_int \l_@@_final_int
1587     \seq_clear:N \l_@@_first_arrows_seq
1588     \seq_put_left:NV \l_@@_first_arrows_seq \l_@@_arrow_int
1589     \seq_clear:N \l_@@_last_arrows_seq
1590     \seq_put_left:NV \l_@@_last_arrows_seq \l_@@_arrow_int
```

If we are in option `group` and in the second step of treatment (`\l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 8`), we don't initialize `\l_@@_x_dim` because we want to use the same value of `\l_@@_x_dim` (computed during the first step) for all the groups.

```

1591 \int_compare:nNnF \l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 8
1592     { \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_x_dim { - \c_max_dim } }
1593 }
```

If we are not at the beginning of a new group.

```
1594 {
```

If the arrow is independent, we don't take into account that arrow for the detection of the end of the group.

```

1595 \str_if_eq:VnF \l_@@_status_arrow_str { independent }
1596 {
```

If the arrow is not independent, the arrow belongs to the current group and we have to take it into account in some variables.

```

1597 \int_compare:nT
1598     { \l_@@_initial_int = \l_@@_first_line_of_group_int }
1599     { \seq_put_left:NV \l_@@_first_arrows_seq \l_@@_arrow_int }
1600     \int_compare:nNnTF \l_@@_final_int > \l_@@_last_line_of_group_int
1601     {
1602         \int_set_eq:NN \l_@@_last_line_of_group_int \l_@@_final_int
1603         \seq_clear:N \l_@@_last_arrows_seq
1604         \seq_put_left:NV \l_@@_last_arrows_seq \l_@@_arrow_int
1605     }
1606     {
1607         \int_compare:nNnT \l_@@_final_int = \l_@@_last_line_of_group_int
1608             { \seq_put_left:NV \l_@@_last_arrows_seq \l_@@_arrow_int }
1609     }
1610 }
```

If the arrow is not independent, we update the current  $x$ -value (in  $\backslash l_{@@}x\_dim$ ) with the dedicated command  $\backslash @@_update_x:nn$ . If we are in option group and in the second step of treatment ( $\backslash l_{@@}pos\_arrow\_int = 8$ ), we don't initialize  $\backslash l_{@@}x\_dim$  because we want to use the same value of  $\backslash l_{@@}x\_dim$  (computed during the first step) for all the groups.

```

1612 \str_if_eq:VnF \l_{@@}status_arrow_str { independent }
1613 {
1614     \int_compare:nNnF \l_{@@}pos_arrow_int = 8
1615     { \@@_update_x:nn \l_{@@}initial_int \l_{@@}final_int }
1616 }
1617 }
```

The following code is necessary because we will have to expand an argument exactly 3 times.

```

1618 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \keys_set:nn { n o }
1619 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_keys_set:
1620     { \keys_set_known:no { WithArrows / Arrow / SecondPass } }
```

The macro  $\backslash @@_draw_arrows:nn$  draws all the arrows whose numbers are between #1 and #2. #1 and #2 must be expressions that expands to an integer (they are expanded in the beginning of the macro). This macro is nullified by the option no-arrows.

```

1621 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_draw_arrows:nn #1 #2
1622 {
1623     \group_begin:
1624     \int_zero_new:N \l_{@@}first_arrow_int
1625     \int_set:Nn \l_{@@}first_arrow_int { #1 }
1626     \int_zero_new:N \l_{@@}last_arrow_int
1627     \int_set:Nn \l_{@@}last_arrow_int { #2 }
```

We begin a loop over the arrows we have to draw. The variable  $\backslash l_{@@}arrow\_int$  (local in the environment  $\{WithArrows\}$ ) will be used as index for the loop.

```

1628 \int_set:Nn \l_{@@}arrow_int \l_{@@}first_arrow_int
1629 \int_until_do:nNnn \l_{@@}arrow_int > \l_{@@}last_arrow_int
1630 {
```

We extract from the property list of the current arrow the fields “initial” and “final” and we store these values in  $\backslash l_{@@}initial\_int$  and  $\backslash l_{@@}final\_int$ . However, we have to do a conversion because the components of a property list are token lists.

```

1631 \prop_get:cnN
1632     { g_{@@}arrow _ \l_{@@}prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_{@@}arrow_int _ prop }
1633     { initial } \l_tmpa_tl
1634 \int_set:Nn \l_{@@}initial_int \l_tmpa_tl
1635 \prop_get:cnN
1636     { g_{@@}arrow _ \l_{@@}prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_{@@}arrow_int _ prop }
1637     { final } \l_tmpa_tl
1638 \int_set:Nn \l_{@@}final_int \l_tmpa_tl
1639 \prop_get:cnN
1640     { g_{@@}arrow _ \l_{@@}prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_{@@}arrow_int _ prop }
1641     { status } \l_{@@}status_arrow_str
```

If the arrow ends after the last line of the environment, we don't draw the arrow (an error has already been raised in  $\backslash @@_scan_arrows:$ ). We recall that, after the construction of the  $\backslash halign$ ,  $\backslash g_{@@}line\_int$  is the total number of lines of the environment).

```
1642 \int_compare:nNnF \l_{@@}final_int > \g_{@@}line_int
```

If the arrow is of type **over** (key o), we don't draw that arrow now (those arrows will be drawn after all the other arrows).

```

1643 {
1644     \str_if_eq:VnTF \l_{@@}status_arrow_str { over }
1645     { \seq_put_right:NV \l_{@@}o_arrows_seq \l_{@@}arrow_int }
```

```

1646           \@@_draw_arrow:
1647       }
1648   \int_incr:N \l_@@_arrow_int
1649 }
1650 \@@_draw_o_arrows_of_the_group:
1651 \group_end:
1652 }

```

The first `\group_begin:` is for the options of the arrows (but we remind that the options `ll`, `rr`, `rl`, `lr`, `i` and `jump` have already been extracted and are not present in the field `options` of the property list of the arrow).

```

1653 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_draw_arrow:
1654 {
1655     \group_begin:

```

We process the options of the current arrow. The second argument of `\keys_set:nn` must be expanded exactly three times. An x-expansion is not possible because there can be tokens like `\bfseries` in the option `font` of the option `tikz`. This expansion is a bit tricky.

```

1656 \prop_get:cN
1657 { g_@@_arrow _\l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
1658 { options } \l_tmpa_tl
1659 \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_previous_key_str
1660 \exp_args:NNo \exp_args:No
1661 \@@_keys_set: { \l_tmpa_tl , tikz = { xshift = \l_@@_xoffset_dim } }

```

We create two booleans to indicate the position of the initial node and final node of the arrow in cases of options `rr`, `rl`, `lr` or `ll`:

```

1662 \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_initial_r_bool
1663 \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_final_r_bool
1664 \int_case:nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int
1665 {
1666     0 { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_final_r_bool }
1667     2 { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_initial_r_bool }
1668     3
1669     {
1670         \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_initial_r_bool
1671         \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_final_r_bool
1672     }
1673 }

```

option	lr	ll	rl	rr	v	i	groups	group
<code>\l_@@_pos_arrow_int</code>	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7

The option `v` can be used only in `\Arrow in code-after` (see below).

In case of option `i` at a local or global level (`\l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 5`), we have to compute the *x*-value of the arrow (which is vertical). The computed *x*-value is stored in `\l_@@_x_dim` (the same variable used when the option `group` or the option `groups` is used).

```

1674 \int_compare:nNnT \l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 5
1675 {
1676     \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_x_dim { - \c_max_dim }
1677     \@@_update_x:nn \l_@@_initial_int \l_@@_final_int
1678 }

```

`\l_@@_initial_tl` contains the name of the Tikz node from which the arrow starts (in normal cases... because with the option `i`, `group` and `groups`, the point will perhaps have another *x*-value — but always the same *y*-value). Idem for `\l_@@_final_tl`.

```

1679 \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_initial_tl
1680 { \int_use:N \l_@@_initial_int - \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_initial_r_bool rl }
1681 \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_final_tl
1682 { \int_use:N \l_@@_final_int - \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_final_r_bool rl }

```

The label of the arrow will be stored in `\l_tmpa_t1`.

```

1683 \prop_get:cN
1684   { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
1685   { label }
1686   \l_tmpa_t1

```

Now, we have to know if the arrow starts at the first line of the group and/or ends at the last line of the group. That's the reason why we have stored in `\l_@@_first_arrows_seq` the list of all the arrows starting at the first line of the group and in `\l_@@_last_arrows_seq` the list of all the arrows ending at the last line of the group. We compute these values in the booleans `\l_tmpa_bool` and `\l_tmpb_bool`. These computations can't be done in the following `{tikzpicture}` because of the command `\seq_if_in:NnTF` which is *not* expandable.

```

1687 \seq_if_in:NxTF \l_@@_first_arrows_seq
1688   { \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int }
1689   { \bool_set_true:N \l_tmpa_bool }
1690   { \bool_set_false:N \l_tmpa_bool }
1691 \seq_if_in:NxTF \l_@@_last_arrows_seq
1692   { \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int }
1693   { \bool_set_true:N \l_tmpb_bool }
1694   { \bool_set_false:N \l_tmpb_bool }
1695 \int_compare:nNnT \l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 5
1696   {
1697     \bool_set_true:N \l_tmpa_bool
1698     \bool_set_true:N \l_tmpb_bool
1699   }

```

We compute and store in `\g_tmpa_t1` and `\g_tmpb_t1` the exact coordinates of the extremities of the arrow.

- Concerning the *x*-values, the abscissa computed in `\l_@@_x_dim` will be used if the option of position is `i`, `group` or `groups`.
- Concerning the *y*-values, an adjustment is done for each arrow starting at the first line of the group and each arrow ending at the last line of the group (with the values of `\l_@@_start_adjust_dim` and `\l_@@_end_adjust_dim`).

```

1700 \dim_gzero_new:N \g_@@_x_initial_dim
1701 \dim_gzero_new:N \g_@@_x_final_dim
1702 \dim_gzero_new:N \g_@@_y_initial_dim
1703 \dim_gzero_new:N \g_@@_y_final_dim
1704 \pgfpicture
1705   \pgfrememberpicturepositiononpagetrue
1706   \pgfpointanchor { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \l_@@_initial_t1 } { south }
1707   \dim_gset:Nn \g_@@_x_initial_dim \pgf@x
1708   \dim_gset:Nn \g_@@_y_initial_dim \pgf@y
1709   \pgfpointanchor { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \l_@@_final_t1 } { north }
1710   \dim_gset:Nn \g_@@_x_final_dim \pgf@x
1711   \dim_gset:Nn \g_@@_y_final_dim \pgf@y
1712 \endpgfpicture
1713 \bool_lazy_and:nnTF
1714   {
1715     \dim_compare_p:nNn { \g_@@_y_initial_dim - \g_@@_y_final_dim }
1716     > \l_@@_max_length_of_arrow_dim
1717   }
1718   { \int_compare_p:nNn { \l_@@_final_int - \l_@@_initial_int } = 1 }
1719   {
1720     \tl_gset:Nx \g_tmpa_t1
1721     {
1722       \int_compare:nNnTF \l_@@_pos_arrow_int < 5
1723         { \dim_use:N \g_@@_x_initial_dim }
1724         { \dim_use:N \l_@@_x_dim },
1725       \dim_eval:n

```

```

1726      {
1727          ( \g_@@_y_initial_dim + \g_@@_y_final_dim ) / 2
1728          + 0.5 \l_@@_max_length_of_arrow_dim
1729      }
1730  }
1731 \tl_gset:Nx \g_tmpb_tl
1732  {
1733      \int_compare:nNnTF \l_@@_pos_arrow_int < 5
1734          { \dim_use:N \g_@@_x_final_dim }
1735          { \dim_use:N \l_@@_x_dim } ,
1736      \dim_eval:n
1737          {
1738              ( \g_@@_y_initial_dim + \g_@@_y_final_dim ) / 2
1739              - 0.5 \l_@@_max_length_of_arrow_dim
1740          }
1741  }
1742  }
1743  {
1744      \tl_gset:Nx \g_tmpa_tl
1745  {
1746      \int_compare:nNnTF \l_@@_pos_arrow_int < 5
1747          { \dim_use:N \g_@@_x_initial_dim }
1748          { \dim_use:N \l_@@_x_dim } ,
1749      \bool_if:NTF \l_tmpa_bool
1750          { \dim_eval:n { \g_@@_y_initial_dim + \l_@@_start_adjust_dim } }
1751          { \dim_use:N \g_@@_y_initial_dim }
1752  }
1753 \tl_gset:Nx \g_tmpb_tl
1754  {
1755      \int_compare:nNnTF \l_@@_pos_arrow_int < 5
1756          { \dim_use:N \g_@@_x_final_dim }
1757          { \dim_use:N \l_@@_x_dim } ,
1758      \bool_if:NTF \l_tmpb_bool
1759          { \dim_eval:n { \g_@@_y_final_dim - \l_@@_end_adjust_dim } }
1760          { \dim_use:N \g_@@_y_final_dim }
1761  }
1762  }

```

The dimension  $\l_@@_delta_x_dim$  is the difference of abscissa between the right side of the alignment (`\halign`) and the left side of the arrow.

```

1763 \bool_if:NF \l_@@_right_overlap_bool
1764  {
1765      \bool_if:NT \l_@@_in_WithArrows_bool
1766  {
1767      \pgfpicture
1768      \pgfrememberpicturepositiononpagetrue
1769      \pgfpointanchor { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - 1 - r } { south }
1770      \int_compare:nNnTF \l_@@_pos_arrow_int < 5
1771          {
1772              \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_delta_x_dim
1773                  {
1774                      \pgf@x -
1775                          ( \dim_min:nn \g_@@_x_initial_dim \g_@@_x_final_dim )
1776                  }
1777          }
1778          { \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_delta_x_dim { \pgf@x - \l_@@_x_dim } }
1779      \endpgfpicture
1780  }
1781  }

```

Eventually, we can draw the arrow with the code in `\l_@@_tikz_code_t1`. We recall that the value by default for this token list is : “`\draw (#1) to node {#3} (#2) ;`”. This value can be modified with the option `tikz-code`. We use the variant `\@@_draw_arrow:nno` of the macro `\@@_draw_arrow:nnn`

because of the characters *underscore* in the name `\l_tmpa_tl`: if the user uses the Tikz library `babel`, the third argument of the command `\@@_draw_arrow:nno` will be rescanned because this third argument will be in the argument of a command `node` of an instruction `\draw` of Tikz... and we will have an error because of the characters *underscore*.<sup>39</sup>

```
1782     \@@_draw_arrow:nno \g_tmpa_tl \g_tmpb_tl \l_tmpa_tl
```

We close the TeX group opened for the options given to `\Arrow[...]` (local level of the options).

```
1783     \group_end:
1784 }
```

The function `\@@_tmpa:nnn` will draw the arrow. It's merely an environment `{tikzpicture}`. However, the Tikz instruction in this environment must be inserted from `\l_@@_tikz_code_tl` with the markers #1, #2 and #3. That's why we create a function `\@@_def_function_tmpa:n` which will create the function `\@@_tmpa:nnn`.

```
1785 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_def_function_tmpa:n #1
1786 {
1787     \cs_set:Npn \@@_tmpa:nnn ##1 ##2 ##3
1788     {
1789         (*LaTeX)
1790             \begin{tikzpicture}
1791         
1792     (*plain-TeX)
1793         \tikzpicture
1794     
1795     [ @@_standard_arrow ]
```

You keep track of the bounding box because we want to compute the total width of the arrow (with the label) for the arrows of type `over` and also for the actualization of `\g_@@_overlap_x_dim`.

```
1796     \pgf@relevantforpicturesizetrue
1797     #1
1798     \dim_compare:nNnTF \pgf@picminx = { 16000 pt }
1799     {
1800         \dim_zero:N \l_tmpa_dim
1801         \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim { \pgf@picmaxx - \pgf@picminx }
1802     \dim_add:Nn \l_tmpa_dim \l_@@_xoffset_dim
1803     \prop_gput:cnV
1804         { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
1805         { width }
1806         \l_tmpa_dim
```

Now, the actualization of `\g_@@_overlap_x_dim`.

```
1806     \bool_if:NF \l_@@_right_overlap_bool
1807     {
1808         \bool_if:NT \l_@@_in_WithArrows_bool
1809         {
1810             \dim_gset:Nn \g_@@_overlap_x_dim
1811             {
1812                 \dim_max:nn
1813                     \g_@@_overlap_x_dim
1814                     { \l_tmpa_dim - \l_@@_delta_x_dim }
1815             }
1816         }
1817     }
1818     \pgfresetboundingbox
1819 (*LaTeX)
1820     \end{tikzpicture}
1821 
1822 (*plain-TeX)
1823     \endtikzpicture
1824 
```

---

<sup>39</sup>There were other solutions: use another name without *underscore* (like `\ltmpat1`) or use the package `underscore` (with this package, the characters *underscore* will be rescanned without errors, even in text mode).

```

1825      }
1826  }
```

When we draw the arrow (with `\@@_draw_arrow:nnn`), we first create the function `\@@_tmpa:nnn` and, then, we use the function `\@@_tmpa:nnn`:

```

1827 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_draw_arrow:nnn #1 #2 #3
1828 {
```

If the option `wrap-lines` is used, we have to use a special version of `\l_@@_tikz_code_tl` (which corresponds to the option `tikz-code`):

```

1829 \bool_lazy_and:nnT \l_@@_wrap_lines_bool \l_@@_in_DispatchWithArrows_bool
1830   { \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_tikz_code_tl \c_@@_tikz_code_wrap_lines_tl }
```

Now, the main lines of this function `\@@_draw_arrow:nnn`.

```

1831 \exp_args:NV \@@_def_function_tmpa:n \l_@@_tikz_code_tl
1832   \@@_tmpa:nnn { #1 } { #2 } { #3 }
1833 }
1834 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_draw_arrow:nnn { n n o }
```

If the option `wrap-lines` is used, we have to use a special version of `\l_@@_tikz_code_tl` (which corresponds to the option `tikz-code`):

```

1835 \tl_const:Nn \c_@@_tikz_code_wrap_lines_tl
1836 {
1837   \pgfset { inner~sep = 0pt }
```

First, we draw the arrow without the label.

```
1838 \draw ( #1 ) to node ( @@_label ) { } ( #2 ) ;
```

We retrieve in `\pgf@x` the abscissa of the left-side of the label we will put.

```
1839 \pgfpointanchor { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - @@_label } { west }
```

We compute in `\l_tmpa_dim` the maximal width possible for the label. Here is the use of `\g_@@_right_x_dim` which has been computed previously with the v-nodes.

```
1840 \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim { \g_@@_right_x_dim - \pgf@x - 0.3333 ex }
```

We retrieve in `\g_tmpa_tl` the current value of the Tikz parameter “text width”.<sup>40</sup>

```
1841 \path \pgfextra { \tl_gset:Nx \g_tmpa_tl \tikz@text@width } ;
```

Maybe the current value of the parameter “text width” is shorter than `\l_tmpa_dim`. In this case, we must use “text width” (we update `\l_tmpa_dim`).

```

1842 \tl_if_empty:NF \g_tmpa_tl
1843 {
1844   \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpb_dim \g_tmpa_tl
1845   \dim_compare:nNnT \l_tmpb_dim < \l_tmpa_dim
1846     { \dim_set_eq:NN \l_tmpa_dim \l_tmpb_dim }
1847 }
```

Now, we can put the label with the right value for “text width”.

```

1848 \dim_compare:nNnT \l_tmpa_dim > \c_zero_dim
1849 {
1850   \path ( @@_label.west )
1851   {*LaTeX}
1852     node [ anchor = west ]
1853     {
1854       \skip_horizontal:n { 0.3333 ex }
1855       \begin{minipage} { \l_tmpa_dim }
1856         \tikz@text@action
1857         \pgfkeysgetvalue{/ tikz / node~halign=header} \l_tmpa_tl
1858         \tl_if_eq:NnTF \l_tmpa_tl { \tikz@align@left@header }
1859           { \pgfutil@raggedright }
```

---

<sup>40</sup>In fact, it's not the current value of “text width”: it's the value of “text width” set in the option `tikz` provided by `witharrows`. These options are given to Tikz in a “every path”. That's why we have to retrieve it in a path.

```

1860      {
1861          \tl_if_eq:NnTF \l_tmpa_tl { \tikz@align@right@header }
1862              { \pgfutil@raggedleft }
1863              {
1864                  \tl_if_eq:NnT \l_tmpa_tl { \tikz@align@center@header }
1865                      { \centering }
1866                  }
1867              }
1868          #3
1869          \end{minipage}
1870      } ;
1871 \end{LaTeX}
1872 (*plain-TeX)
1873     node [ anchor = west , text~width = \dim_use:N \l_tmpa_dim ]
1874         { #3 } ;
1875 \end{plain-TeX}
1876     }
1877 }
```

### 12.11.1 The command update\_x

The command `\@@_update_x:nn` will analyze the lines between #1 and #2 in order to modify `\l_@@_x_dim` in consequence. More precisely, `\l_@@_x_dim` is increased if a line longer than the current value of `\l_@@_x_dim` is found. `\@@_update_x:nn` is used in `\@@_scan_arrows:` (for options `group` and `groups`) and in `\@@_draw_arrows:nn` (for option `i`).

```

1878 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_update_x:nn #1 #2
1879 {
1880     \dim_gset_eq:NN \g_tmpa_dim \l_@@_x_dim
1881     \pgfpicture
1882     \pgfrememberpicturepositiononpagetrue
1883     \int_step_inline:nnn { #1 } { #2 }
1884     {
1885         \pgfpointanchor { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - ##1 - 1 } { center }
1886         \dim_gset:Nn \g_tmpa_dim { \dim_max:nn \g_tmpa_dim \pgf@x }
1887     }
1888     \endpgfpicture
1889     \dim_set_eq:NN \l_@@_x_dim \g_tmpa_dim
1890 }
```

### 12.11.2 We draw the arrows of type o

We recall that the arrows of type `o` will be drawn *over* (hence the letter `o`) the other arrows. The arrows of type `o` are available only when the option `group` or the option `groups` is in force. The arrows of type `o` will be drawn group by group. The command `\@@_draw_o_arrows_of_the_group:` is called after the construction of the (other) arrows of the group.

```

1891 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_draw_o_arrows_of_the_group:
1892 {
```

The numbers of the arrows of type `o` we have to draw are in the sequence `\l_@@_o_arrows_seq`. We have to sort that sequence because the order in which these arrows will be drawn matters.

- The arrows which arrive first must be drawn first.
- For arrows with the same final line, the arrows with lower initial line must be drawn after (because they encompass the previous ones).

The second point ensures the expected output in situations such as in the following example :

```
$\begin{WithArrows}[groups]
A & = B \Arrow{o,jump=3}{one} \\
& = C \Arrow{o,jump=2}{two} \\
& = D \Arrow{three} \\
& = E + E
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{array}{c} A = B \\ = C \\ = D \\ = E + E \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \nearrow \text{one} \\ \nearrow \text{two} \\ \searrow \text{three} \end{array}$$

```
1893 \seq_sort:Nn \l_@@_o_arrows_seq
1894 {
1895   \prop_get:cnN
1896   { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ ##1 _ prop }
1897   { final } \l_tmpa_tl
```

We recall that `\prop_get:cnN` retrieves token lists (here `\l_tmpa_tl` and `\l_tmpb_tl`). We don't need to do an explicit conversion in L3 integers because such token lists can be used directly in `\int_compare:nNnTF`.

```
1898 \prop_get:cnN
1899   { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ ##2 _ prop }
1900   { final } \l_tmpb_tl
1901 \int_compare:nNnTF \l_tmpa_tl < \l_tmpb_tl
1902   \sort_return_same:
1903   {
1904     \int_compare:nNnTF \l_tmpa_tl > \l_tmpb_tl
1905     \sort_return_swapped:
1906     {
1907       \prop_get:cnN
1908       { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ ##1 _ prop }
1909       { initial } \l_tmpa_tl
1910       \prop_get:cnN
1911       { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ ##2 _ prop }
1912       { initial } \l_tmpb_tl
1913       \int_compare:nNnTF \l_tmpa_tl < \l_tmpb_tl
1914       \sort_return_swapped:
1915       \sort_return_same:
1916     }
1917   }
1918 }
```

Now, we can draw the arrows of type o of the group in the order of the sequence.

```
1919 \seq_map_inline:Nn \l_@@_o_arrows_seq
1920 {
```

We retrieve the initial row and the final row of the arrow.

```
1921   \prop_get:cnN
1922   { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ ##1 _ prop }
1923   { initial } \l_tmpa_tl
1924 \int_set:Nn \l_@@_initial_int \l_tmpa_tl
1925   \prop_get:cnN
1926   { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ ##1 _ prop }
1927   { final } \l_tmpa_tl
1928 \int_set:Nn \l_@@_final_int \l_tmpa_tl
```

The string `\l_@@_input_line_str` will be used only in some error messages.

```
1929   \prop_get:cnN
1930   { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ ##1 _ prop }
1931   { input-line } \l_@@_input_line_str
```

We have to compute the maximal width of all the arrows (with their labels) which are covered by our arrow. We will compute that dimension in `\g_tmpa_dim`. We need a global dimension because we will have to exit a `\pgfpicture`.

```
1932 \dim_gzero:N \g_tmpa_dim
```

We will raise the boolean `\g_tmpa_bool` if we find an arrow “under” our arrow (we should find at least once since you are drawing an arrow of type o: if not, we will raise an error<sup>41</sup>).

```

1933     \bool_set_false:N \g_tmpa_bool
1934     \pgfpicture
1935     \pgfrememberpicturepositiononpagetrue
1936     \int_step_inline:nnn \l_@@_first_arrow_int \l_@@_last_arrow_int
1937     {
1938         \prop_get:cnN
1939         { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ #####1 _ prop }
1940         { initial } \l_tmpa_tl
1941         \prop_get:cnN
1942         { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ #####1 _ prop }
1943         { final } \l_tmpb_tl
1944         \prop_get:cnN
1945         { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ #####1 _ prop }
1946         { status } \l_@@_status_arrow_str
1947         \bool_if:nT
1948         {
1949             ! \int_compare_p:n { ##1 = #####1 }
1950             && \int_compare_p:n { \l_@@_initial_int <= \l_tmpa_tl }
1951             && \int_compare_p:n { \l_tmpb_tl <= \l_@@_final_int }

```

We don't take into account the independent arrows because we have only computed the *width* of the arrows and that's why our arrow of type o will be positionned only relatively to the current group.

```

1952     && ! \str_if_eq_p:Vn \l_@@_status_arrow_str { independent }
1953 }
1954 {

```

The total width of the arrow (with its label) has been stored in a “field” of the arrow.

```

1955     \bool_gset_true:N \g_tmpa_bool
1956     \prop_get:cnN
1957     { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ #####1 _ prop }
1958     { width }
1959     \l_tmpa_tl

```

We have to do a global affectation in order to exit the pgfpicture.

```

1960     \dim_gset:Nn \g_tmpa_dim { \dim_max:nn \g_tmpa_dim \l_tmpa_tl }
1961 }
1962 }
1963 \endpgfpicture

```

The boolean `\g_tmpa_bool` is raised if at least one arrow has been found “under” our arrow (it should be the case since we are drawing an arrow of type o).

```

1964     \bool_if:NTF \g_tmpa_bool
1965     {
1966         \int_set:Nn \l_@@_arrow_int { ##1 }
1967         \dim_set_eq:NN \l_@@_xoffset_dim \g_tmpa_dim
1968         \dim_add:Nn \l_@@_xoffset_dim \l_@@_xoffset_for_o_arrows_dim
1969         \@@_draw_arrow:
1970     }
1971     { \@@_error:n { o-arrow-with-no-arrow-under } }
1972 }
1973 }

```

The command `\WithArrowsLastEnv` is not used by the package `witharrows`. It's only a facility given to the final user. It gives the number of the last environment `{WithArrows}` at level 0 (to the sense of the nested environments). This macro is fully expandable and, thus, can be used directly in the name of a Tikz node.

```

1974 (*LaTeX)
1975 \NewExpandableDocumentCommand \WithArrowsLastEnv { }

```

---

<sup>41</sup> Maybe we will change that in future versions.

```

1976 { \int_use:N \g_@@_last_env_int }
1977 
```

$\langle / \text{LaTeX} \rangle$   
    $\langle * \text{plain-TeX} \rangle$

```

1979 \cs_new:Npn \WithArrowsLastEnv { \int_use:N \g_@@_last_env_int }
1980 
```

$\langle / \text{plain-TeX} \rangle$

## 12.12 The command $\backslash\text{Arrow}$ in code-after

The option `code-after` is an option of the environment `{WithArrows}` (this option is only available at the environment level). In the option `code-after`, one can use the command `Arrow` but it's a special version of the command `Arrow`. For this special version (internally called `\@@_Arrow_code_after`), we define a special set of keys called `WithArrows/Arrow/code-after`.

```

1981 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / Arrow / code-after }
1982 {
1983   tikz .code:n =
1984     \tikzset { WithArrows / arrow / .append-style = { #1 } } ,
1985   tikz .value_required:n = true ,
1986   rr .value_forbidden:n = true ,
1987   rr .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n 0 ,
1988   ll .value_forbidden:n = true ,
1989   ll .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n 1 ,
1990   rl .value_forbidden:n = true ,
1991   rl .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n 2 ,
1992   lr .value_forbidden:n = true ,
1993   lr .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n 3 ,
1994   v .value_forbidden:n = true ,
1995   v .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n 4 ,
1996   tikz-code .tl_set:N = \l_@@_tikz_code_tl ,
1997   tikz-code .value_required:n = true ,
1998   xoffset .dim_set:N = \l_@@_xoffset_dim ,
1999   xoffset .value_required:n = true ,
2000   unknown .code:n =
2001     \@@_sort_seq:N \l_@@_options_Arrow_code_after_seq
2002     \@@_error:n { Unknown~option~Arrow~in~code-after }
2003 }
```

A sequence of the options available in `\Arrow` in `code-after`. This sequence will be used in the error messages and can be modified dynamically.

```

2004 \seq_new:N \l_@@_options_Arrow_code_after_seq
2005 \@@_set_seq_of_str_from_clist:Nn \l_@@_options_Arrow_code_after_seq
2006 { ll, lr, rl, rr, tikz, tikz-code, v, x, offset }
```

```

2007 
```

$\langle * \text{LaTeX} \rangle$

```

2008 \NewDocumentCommand \@@_Arrow_code_after { O { } m m m ! O { } }
```

$\langle / \text{LaTeX} \rangle$

$\langle * \text{plain-TeX} \rangle$

```

2009 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_Arrow_code_after
2010 {
```

```

2011   \peek_meaning:NTF [
```

    { \@@\_Arrow\_code\_after\_i }

    { \@@\_Arrow\_code\_after\_i [ ] }

  }

```

2012 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_Arrow_code_after_i [ #1 ] #2 #3 #4
```

  {

```

2013   \peek_meaning:NTF [
```

    { \@@\_Arrow\_code\_after\_ii [ #1 ] { #2 } { #3 } { #4 } }

    { \@@\_Arrow\_code\_after\_ii [ #1 ] { #2 } { #3 } { #4 } [ ] }

  }

```

2014 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_Arrow_code_after_ii [ #1 ] #2 #3 #4 [ #5 ]
```

$\langle / \text{plain-TeX} \rangle$

```

2025  {
2026    \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int 1
2027    \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_previous_key_str
2028    \group_begin:
2029      \keys_set:nn { WithArrows / Arrow / code-after }
2030        { #1, #5, tikz = { xshift = \l_@@_xoffset_dim } }
2031        \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_initial_r_bool
2032        \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_final_r_bool
2033        \int_case:nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int
2034          {
2035            0
2036            {
2037              \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_initial_r_bool
2038              \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_final_r_bool
2039            }
2040            2 { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_initial_r_bool }
2041            3 { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_final_r_bool }
2042          }

```

We prevent drawing an arrow from a line to itself.

```

2043  \tl_if_eq:nnTF { #2 } { #3 }
2044    { \@@_error:nn { Both-lines-are-equal } { #2 } }

```

We test whether the two Tikz nodes (#2-1) and (#3-1) really exist. If not, the arrow won't be drawn.

```

2045  {
2046    \cs_if_free:cTF { pgf@sh@ns@wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - #2 - 1 }
2047    { \@@_error:nx { Wrong-line-in-Arrow } { #2 } }
2048    {
2049      \cs_if_free:cTF { pgf@sh@ns@wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - #3 - 1 }
2050      { \@@_error:nx { Wrong-line-in-Arrow } { #3 } }
2051      {
2052        \int_compare:nNnTF \l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 4
2053        {
2054          \pgfpicture
2055            \pgfrememberpicturepositiononpagetrue
2056            \pgfpointanchor { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - #2 - 1 }
2057              { south }
2058            \dim_set_eq:NN \l_tmpa_dim \pgf@x
2059            \dim_set_eq:NN \l_tmpb_dim \pgf@y
2060            \pgfpointanchor { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - #3 - 1 }
2061              { north }
2062            \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim
2063              { \dim_max:nn \l_tmpa_dim \pgf@x }
2064            \tl_gset:Nx \g_tmpa_tl
2065              { \dim_use:N \l_tmpa_dim , \dim_use:N \l_tmpb_dim }
2066            \tl_gset:Nx \g_tmpb_tl
2067              { \dim_use:N \l_tmpa_dim , \dim_use:N \pgf@y }
2068            \endpgfpicture
2069        }
2070        {
2071          \pgfpicture
2072            \pgfrememberpicturepositiononpagetrue
2073            \pgfpointanchor
2074              {
2075                wa - \l_@@_prefix_str -
2076                #2 - \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_initial_r_bool r l
2077              }
2078              { south }
2079            \tl_gset:Nx \g_tmpa_tl
2080              { \dim_use:N \pgf@x , \dim_use:N \pgf@y }
2081            \pgfpointanchor
2082              {
2083                wa - \l_@@_prefix_str -

```

```

2084          #3 - \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_final_r_bool r 1
2085      }
2086      { north }
2087      \tl_gset:Nx \g_tmpb_tl
2088      { \dim_use:N \pgf@x , \dim_use:N \pgf@y }
2089      \endpgfpicture
2090    }
2091    \@@_draw_arrow:nnn \g_tma_tl \g_tmpb_tl { #4 }
2092  }
2093 }
2094 }
2095 \group_end:
2096 }
```

## 12.13 The command \MultiArrow in code-after

The command \@@\_MultiArrow:nn will be linked to \MultiArrow when the code-after is executed.

```

2097 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_MultiArrow:nn #1 #2
2098 {
```

The user of the command \MultiArrow (in code-after) will be able to specify the list of lines with the same syntax as the loop \foreach of pgffor. First, we test with a regular expression whether the format of the list of lines is correct.

```

2099 \exp_args:Nnx
2100   \regex_match:nnTF
2101   { \A \d+ (\,,\d+)* ( \, \.\.\. (\,,\d+)* )* \Z }
2102   { #1 }
2103   { \@@_MultiArrow_i:nn { #1 } { #2 } }
2104   { \@@_error:nx { Invalid-specification-for-MultiArrow } { #1 } }
2105 }
2106 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_MultiArrow_i:nn #1 #2
2107 {
```

That's why we construct a "clist" of L3 from the specification of list given by the user. The construction of the "clist" must be global in order to exit the \foreach and that's why we will construct the list in \g\_tma\_clist.

```

2108 \foreach \x in { #1 }
2109 {
2110   \cs_if_free:cTF { pgf@sh@ns@wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \x - 1 }
2111   { \@@_error:nx { Wrong-line-specification-in-MultiArrow } \x }
2112   { \clist_gput_right:Nx \g_tma_clist \x }
2113 }
```

We sort the list \g\_tma\_clist because we want to extract the minimum and the maximum.

```

2114 \int_compare:nTF { \clist_count:N \g_tma_clist < 2 }
2115 { \@@_error:n { Too-small-specification-for-MultiArrow } }
2116 {
2117   \clist_sort:Nn \g_tma_clist
2118   {
2119     \int_compare:nTF { ##1 > ##2 }
2120     \sort_return_swapped:
2121     \sort_return_same:
2122   }
```

We extract the minimum in \l\_tma\_tl (it must be an integer but we store it in a token list of L3).

```

2123 \clist_pop:NN \g_tma_clist \l_tma_tl
```

We extract the maximum in \l\_tmpb\_tl. The remaining list (in \g\_tma\_clist) will be sorted in decreasing order but never mind...

```

2124 \clist_reverse:N \g_tma_clist
2125 \clist_pop:NN \g_tma_clist \l_tmpb_tl
```

We draw the teeth of the rak (except the first one and the last one) with the auxiliary function `\@_MultiArrow_i:n`. This auxiliary fonction is necessary to expand the specification of the list in the `\foreach` loop. The first and the last teeth of the rak can't be drawn the same way as the others (think, for example, to the case of the option “rounded corners” is used).

```
2126     \exp_args:NV @_MultiArrow_i:n \g_tmpa_clist
```

Now, we draw the rest of the structure.

```
2127  (*LaTeX)
2128      \begin{tikzpicture}
2129  
```

`/LaTeX`

```
2130  (*plain-TeX)
2131      \tikzpicture
2132  
```

`/plain-TeX`

```
[
```

`@_standard ,`

```
every-path / .style = { WithArrows / arrow }
```

```
]
\draw [<->] ([xshift = \l_@_xoffset_dim]\l_tmpa_tl-r.south)
-- +(5mm,0)
-- node (@_label) {}
([xshift = \l_@_xoffset_dim+5mm]\l_tmpb_tl-r.south)
-- ([xshift = \l_@_xoffset_dim]\l_tmpb_tl-r.south) ;
\pgfpointanchor { wa - \l_@_prefix_str - @_label } { west }
\dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim { 20 cm }
\path \pgfextra { \tl_gset:Nx \g_tmpa_tl \tikz@text@width } ;
\tl_if_empty:NF \g_tmpa_tl { \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim \g_tmpa_tl }
\bool_lazy_and:nnT \l_@_wrap_lines_bool \l_@_in_DisWithArrows_bool
{
\dim_set:Nn \l_tmpb_dim
{ \g_@_right_x_dim - \pgf@x - 0.3333 em }
\dim_compare:nNnT \l_tmpb_dim < \l_tmpa_dim
{ \dim_set_eq:NN \l_tmpa_dim \l_tmpb_dim }
}
\path (@_label.west)
node [ anchor = west, text-width = \dim_use:N \l_tmpa_dim ] { #2 } ;

```

`*LaTeX`

```
\end{tikzpicture}

```

`/LaTeX`

```
2158  (*plain-TeX)
2159      \endtikzpicture
2160  
```

`/plain-TeX`

```
}
}
}

2163 \cs_new_protected:Npn @_MultiArrow_i:n #1
{
2165  (*LaTeX)
2166      \begin{tikzpicture}
2167  
```

`/LaTeX`

```
2168  (*plain-TeX)
2169      \tikzpicture
2170  
```

`/plain-TeX`

```
[
```

`@_standard ,`

```
every-path / .style = { WithArrows / arrow }
```

```
]
\foreach \k in { #1 }
{
\draw [ <- ]
( [xshift = \l_@_xoffset_dim]\k-r.south ) -- +(5mm,0) ;
} % ;

```

`*LaTeX`

```
\end{tikzpicture}

```

`/LaTeX`

```

2183  {*plain-TeX}
2184      \endtikzpicture
2185  
```

## 12.14 The error messages of the package

```

2187 \bool_if:NTF \c_@@_messages_for_Overleaf_bool
2188   { \str_const:Nn \c_@@_available_keys_str { } }
2189   {
2190     \str_const:Nn \c_@@_available_keys_str
2191       { For~a~list~of~the~available~keys,~type~H~<return>. }
2192   }
2193 \str_new:N \l_witharrows_body_str

```

The following commands must *not* be protected since they will be used in error messages.

```

2194 \cs_new:Npn \@@_potential_body_i:
2195   {
2196     \str_if_empty:NF \l_witharrows_body_str
2197       { \\ If~you~want~to~see~the~body~of~the~environment,~type~H~<return>. }
2198   }
2199 \cs_new:Npn \@@_potential_body_ii:
2200   {
2201     \str_if_empty:NTF \l_witharrows_body_str
2202       { No~further~help~available }
2203       {
2204         The~body~of~your~environment~was:\\
2205         \l_witharrows_body_str
2206       }
2207   }
2208 \str_const:Nn \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2209   { If~you~go~on,~this~option~will~be~ignored. }
2210 \str_const:Nn \c_@@_command_ignored_str
2211   { If~you~go~on,~this~command~will~be~ignored. }
2212 
```

*(\*LaTeX)*

```

2213 \@@_msg_new:nn { amsmath-not-loaded }
2214   {
2215     amsmath-not-loaded.\\
2216     You~can't~use~the~option~'\l_keys_key_str'~because~the~
2217     package~'amsmath'~has~not~been~loaded.\\
2218     If~you~go~on,~this~option~will~be~ignored~in~the~rest~
2219     of~the~document.
2220   }
2221 
```

*(/LaTeX)*

```

2222 \@@_msg_new:nn { Bad~value~for~replace~brace~by }
2223   {
2224     Incorrect~value.\\
2225     Bad~value~for~the~option~'\l_keys_key_str'.~The~value~must~begin~
2226     with~an~extensible~left~delimiter.~The~possible~values~are:~,~,
2227     \token_to_str:N \{,~,~,~\token_to_str:N \lbrace,~
2228     \token_to_str:N \lbrack,~,~\token_to_str:N \lgroup,~
2229     \token_to_str:N \langle,~,~\token_to_str:N \lmoustache,~
2230     \token_to_str:N \lfloor,~and~\token_to_str:N \lceil~
2231     (and~\token_to_str:N \lvert~and~\token_to_str:N \lVert~
2232     if~amsmath~or~unicode~math~is~loaded~in~LaTeX).\\
2233     \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2234   }
2235 \@@_msg_new:nn { option~of~cr~negative }
2236   {
2237     Bad~value.\\

```

```

2238 The~argument~of~the~command~\token_to_str:N\\-
2239 should~be~positive~in~the~row~\int_use:N \g_@@_line_int\
2240 of~your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}.\\
2241 \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2242 }
2243 \@@_msg_new:nn { omit~probably~used }
2244 {
2245 Strange~problem.\\
2246 Maybe~you~have~used~a~command~\\
2247 \token_to_str:N\omit\ in~the~line~\int_use:N \g_@@_line_int\\
2248 (or~another~line)~of~your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}.\\
2249 You~can~go~on~but~you~may~have~others~errors.
2250 }
2251 <*LaTeX>
2252 \@@_msg_new:nnn { newline~at~the~end~of~env }
2253 {
2254 Incorrect~end.\\
2255 The~environments~of~witharrows~(\{WithArrows\}~and~\\
2256 \{DispWithArrows\})~should~not~end~by~\token_to_str:N \\.\\
2257 However,~you~can~go~on~for~this~time.~No~similar~error~will~be~
2258 raised~in~this~document.
2259 \@@_potential_body_i:
2260 }
2261 { \@@_potential_body_ii: }
2262 </LaTeX>
2263 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Invalid~option~format }
2264 {
2265 Invalidate~value.\\
2266 The~key~'format'~should~contain~only~letters~r,~c~and~l~and~
2267 must~not~be~empty.\\
2268 \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2269 \@@_potential_body_i:
2270 }
2271 { \@@_potential_body_ii: }
2272 \@@_msg_new:nnn { invalid~key~o }
2273 {
2274 Invalid~use~of~a~key.\\
2275 The~key~'o'~for~individual~arrows~can~be~used~only~in~mode~\\
2276 'group'~or~in~mode~'groups'.\\
2277 \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2278 \@@_potential_body_i:
2279 }
2280 { \@@_potential_body_ii: }
2281 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Value~for~a~key }
2282 {
2283 Misuse~of~a~key.\\
2284 The~key~'\l_keys_key_str'~should~be~used~without~value. \\
2285 However,~you~can~go~on~for~this~time.
2286 \@@_potential_body_i:
2287 }
2288 { \@@_potential_body_ii: }
2289 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Unknown~option~in~Arrow }
2290 {
2291 Unknown~option.\\
2292 The~key~'\l_keys_key_str'~is~unknown~for~the~command~\\
2293 \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str\ in~the~row~\\
2294 \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int\ of~your~environment~\\
2295 \{\l_@@_type_env_str\}. \l_tmpa_str \\
2296 \c_@@_option_ignored_str \\
2297 \c_@@_available_keys_str
2298 }

```

```

2299 {
2300   The~available~keys~are~(in~alphabetic~order):~
2301   \seq_use:Nnnn \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq {~and~} {,~} {~and~}.
2302 }
2303 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Unknown~option~WithArrows }
2304 {
2305   Unknown~option.\\
2306   The~key~'\l_keys_key_str'~is~unknown~in~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}. \\
2307   \c_@@_option_ignored_str \\
2308   \c_@@_available_keys_str
2309 }
2310 {
2311   The~available~keys~are~(in~alphabetic~order):~
2312   \seq_use:Nnnn \l_@@_options_WithArrows_seq {~and~} {,~} {~and~}.
2313 }
2314 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Unknown~option~DispWithArrows }
2315 {
2316   Unknown~option.\\
2317   The~key~'\l_keys_key_str'~is~unknown~in~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}. \\
2318   \c_@@_option_ignored_str \\
2319   \c_@@_available_keys_str
2320 }
2321 {
2322   The~available~keys~are~(in~alphabetic~order):~
2323   \seq_use:Nnnn \l_@@_options_DispWithArrows_seq {~and~} {,~} {~and~}.
2324 }
2325 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Unknown~option~WithArrowsOptions }
2326 {
2327   Unknown~option.\\
2328   The~key~'\l_keys_key_str'~is~unknown~in~\\
2329   \token_to_str:N \WithArrowsOptions. \\
2330   \c_@@_option_ignored_str \\
2331   \c_@@_available_keys_str
2332 }
2333 {
2334   The~available~keys~are~(in~alphabetic~order):~
2335   \seq_use:Nnnn \l_@@_options_WithArrowsOptions_seq {~and~} {,~} {~and~}.
2336 }
2337 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Unknown~option~Arrow~in~code~after }
2338 {
2339   Unknown~option.\\
2340   The~key~'\l_keys_key_str'~is~unknown~in~\\
2341   \token_to_str:N \Arrow\ in~code~after. \\
2342   \c_@@_option_ignored_str \\
2343   \c_@@_available_keys_str
2344 }
2345 {
2346   The~available~keys~are~(in~alphabetic~order):~
2347   \seq_use:Nnnn \l_@@_options_Arrow_code_after_seq {~and~} {,~} {~and~}.
2348 }
2349 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Too~much~columns~in~WithArrows }
2350 {
2351   Too~much~columns.\\
2352   Your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}~has~\int_use:N
2353   \l_@@_nb_cols_int~columns~and~you~try~to~use~one~more.~
2354   Maybe~you~have~forgotten~a~\c_backslash_str\c_backslash_str.~
2355   If~you~really~want~to~use~more~columns~(after~the~arrows)~you~should~use~
2356   the~option~'more-columns'~at~a~global~level~or~for~an~environment. \\
2357   However,~you~can~go~one~for~this~time.
2358   \@@_potential_body_i:
2359 }
2360 { \@@_potential_body_ii: }

```

```

2361 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Too-much-columns-in-DispWithArrows }
2362 {
2363   Too-much-columns.\\
2364   Your-environment-\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}-has~\int_use:N
2365   \l_@@_nb_cols_int\ columns-and-you~try-to~use-one-more.~
2366   Maybe~you~have~forgotten~a~\c_backslash_str\c_backslash_str\
2367   at~the~end~of~row~\int_use:N \g_@@_line_int. \\
2368   This~error~is~fatal.
2369   \@@_potential_body_i:
2370 }
2371 { \@@_potential_body_ii: }

2372 \@@_msg_new:nn { Negative-jump }
2373 {
2374   Incorrect-value.\\
2375   You~can't~use~a~negative~value~for~the~option~'jump'~of~command~
2376   \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str\
2377   in~the~row~\int_use:N \g_@@_line_int\
2378   of~your~environment-\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}.~
2379   You~can~create~an~arrow~going~backwards~with~the~option~'<-'~of~Tikz. \\
2380   \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2381 }

2382 \@@_msg_new:nn { new-group-without-groups }
2383 {
2384   Misuse~of~a~key.\\
2385   You~can't~use~the~option~'new-group'~for~the~command~
2386   \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str\
2387   because~you~are~not~in~'groups'~mode.~Try~to~use~the~option~
2388   'groups'~in~your~environment-\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}. \\
2389   \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2390 }

2391 \@@_msg_new:nnn
2392 { Too-few-lines-for-an-arrow }
2393 {
2394   Impossible~arrow.\\
2395   Line-\l_@@_input_line_str\
2396   :~an~arrow~specified~in~the~row~\int_use:N \l_@@_initial_int\
2397   of~your~environment-\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}~can't~be~drawn~
2398   because~it~arrives~after~the~last~row~of~the~environment. \\
2399   If~you~go~on,~this~arrow~will~be~ignored.
2400   \@@_potential_body_i:
2401 }
2402 { \@@_potential_body_ii: }

2403 \@@_msg_new:nn { o-arrow-with-no-arrow-under }
2404 {
2405   Problem~with~the~key~'o'.\\
2406   Line-\l_@@_input_line_str\
2407   :~there~is~no~arrow~'under'~your~arrow~of~type~'o'.\\
2408   If~you~go~on,~this~arrow~won't~be~drawn.
2409 }

2410 \@@_msg_new:nnn { WithArrows~outside~math~mode }
2411 {
2412   You~are~outside~math~mode.\\
2413   The~environment-\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}~should~be~used~only~in~math~mode~
2414   like~the~environment-\{aligned\}~of~amsmath. \\
2415   Nevertheless,~you~can~go~on.
2416   \@@_potential_body_i:
2417 }
2418 { \@@_potential_body_ii: }

2419 \@@_msg_new:nnn { DispWithArrows~in~math~mode }
2420 {
2421   You~are~in~math~mode.\\

```

```

2422 The~environment~`\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}`~should~be~used~only~outside~math~
2423 mode~like~the~environments~`{align}`~and~`{align*}`~of~amsmath. \\
2424 This~error~is~fatal.
2425 \@@_potential_body_i:
2426 }
2427 { \@@_potential_body_ii: }

2428 \@@_msg_new:nn { Incompatible-options-in-Arrow }
2429 {
2430   Incompatible-options.\\
2431   You~try~to~use~the~option~`\l_keys_key_str`~but~
2432   this~option~is~incompatible~or~redundant~with~the~option~
2433   `\l_@@_previous_key_str`~set~in~the~same~command~
2434   `\l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str`. \\
2435   \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2436 }

2437 \@@_msg_new:nn { Incompatible-options_a}
2438 {
2439   Incompatible-options.\\
2440   You~try~to~use~the~option~`\l_keys_key_str`~but~
2441   this~option~is~incompatible~or~redundant~with~the~option~
2442   `\l_@@_previous_key_str`~set~in~the~same~command~
2443   \bool_if:NT \l_@@_in_code_after_bool
2444   {
2445     `\l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str`\\
2446     in~the~code~after~of~your~environment~`\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}`\\
2447   }. \\
2448   \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2449 }

2450 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Arrow-not-in-last-column }
2451 {
2452   Bad-use-of-`\l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str`.\\
2453   You~should~use~the~command~`\l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str`\\
2454   only~in~the~last~column~(column~`int_use:N`~\l_@@_nb_cols_int)~\\
2455   in~the~row~`int_use:N`~\g_@@_line_int`\\
2456   of~your~environment~`\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}`.\\
2457   However~you~can~go~on~for~this~time.
2458   \@@_potential_body_i:
2459 }
2460 { \@@_potential_body_ii: }

2461 \@@_msg_new:nn { Wrong-line-in-Arrow }
2462 {
2463   Wrong-line.\\
2464   The~specification~of~line~`#1`~you~use~in~the~command~\\
2465   `\l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str`\\
2466   in~the~'code-after'~of~`\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}`~doesn't~exist. \\
2467   \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2468 }

2469 \@@_msg_new:nn { Both-lines-are-equal }
2470 {
2471   Both-lines-are-equal.\\
2472   In~the~'code-after'~of~`\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}`~you~try~to~\\
2473   draw~an~arrow~going~to~itself~from~the~line~`#1`~.~This~is~not~possible. \\
2474   \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2475 }

2476 \@@_msg_new:nn { Wrong-line-specification-in-MultiArrow }
2477 {
2478   Wrong-line-specification.\\
2479   The~specification~of~line~`#1`~doesn't~exist. \\
2480   If~you~go~on,~it~will~be~ignored~for~\token_to_str:N~\MultiArrow.
2481 }

2482 \@@_msg_new:nn { Too-small-specification-for-MultiArrow }

```

```

2483 {
2484   Too~small~specification.\\
2485   The~specification~of~lines~you~gave~to~\token_to_str:N~\MultiArrow\\
2486   is~too~small:~you~need~at~least~two~lines.~\\
2487   \c_@@_command_ignored_str
2488 }
2489 \@@_msg_new:nn { Not~allowed~in~DispWithArrows }
2490 {
2491   Forbidden~command.\\
2492   The~command~\token_to_str:N~#1
2493   is~allowed~only~in~the~last~column~
2494   (column~\int_use:N~\l_@@_nb_cols_int)~of~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}.~\\
2495   \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2496 }
2497 \@@_msg_new:nn { Not~allowed~in~WithArrows }
2498 {
2499   Forbidden~command.\\
2500   The~command~\token_to_str:N~#1~is~not~allowed~in~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}~
2501   (it's~allowed~in~the~last~column~of~\{DispWithArrows\}).~\\
2502   \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2503 }
2504 <*LaTeX>
2505 \@@_msg_new:nn { tag*~without~amsmath }
2506 {
2507   amsmath~not~loaded.\\
2508   We~can't~use~\token_to_str:N~tag*~because~you~haven't~loaded~amsmath~
2509   (or~mathtools).~\\
2510   If~you~go~on,~the~command~\token_to_str:N~tag\\
2511   will~be~used~instead.
2512 }
2513 \@@_msg_new:nn { Multiple~tags }
2514 {
2515   Multiple~tags.\\
2516   You~can't~use~twice~the~command~\token_to_str:N~tag\\
2517   in~a~line~of~the~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}.~\\
2518   If~you~go~on,~the~tag~'#1'~will~be~used.
2519 }
2520 \@@_msg_new:nn { Multiple~labels }
2521 {
2522   Multiple~labels.\\
2523   Normally,~we~can't~use~the~command~\token_to_str:N~label\\
2524   twice~in~a~line~of~the~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}.~\\
2525   However,~you~can~go~on.~\\
2526   \IfPackageLoadedTF { showlabels }
2527   { However,~only~the~last~label~will~be~shown~by~showlabels.~ } { }
2528   If~you~don't~want~to~see~this~message~again,~you~can~use~the~option~
2529   'allow-multiple-labels'~at~the~global~or~environment~level.
2530 }
2531 \@@_msg_new:nn { Multiple~labels~with~cleveref }
2532 {
2533   Multiple~labels.\\
2534   Since~you~use~cleveref,~you~can't~use~the~command~\token_to_str:N~label\\
2535   twice~in~a~line~of~the~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}.~\\
2536   If~you~go~on,~you~may~have~undefined~references.
2537 }
2538 </LaTeX>
2539 \@@_msg_new:nn { Inexistent~v-node }
2540 {
2541   There~is~a~problem.\\
2542   Maybe~you~have~put~a~command~\token_to_str:N~\cr\\
2543   instead~of~a~command~\token_to_str:N~\at~the~end~of~

```

```

2544   the~row~\l_tmpa_int\  

2545   of~your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}. \\  

2546   This~error~is~fatal.  

2547 }

The following error when the user tries to use the option xoffset in mode group or groups (in fact, it's possible to use the option xoffset if there is only one arrow: of course, the option group and groups do not make sense in this case but, maybe, the option was set in a \WithArrowsOptions).
2548 \@@_msg_new:nn { Option-xoffset-forbidden }  

2549 {  

2550   Incorrect~key.\\  

2551   You~can't~use~the~option~'xoffset'~in~the~command~  

2552   \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str\ in~the~row~\int_use:N \g_@@_line_int\  

2553   of~your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}~  

2554   because~you~are~using~the~option~  

2555   ' \int_compare:nNnTF \l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 7  

2556     { group }  

2557     { groups } '.~It's~possible~for~an~independent~arrow~or~if~there~is~  

2558   only~one~arrow. \\  

2559   \c_@@_option_ignored_str  

2560 }

2561 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Duplicate~name }  

2562 {  

2563   Duplicate~name.\\  

2564   The~name~'\l_keys_value_tl'~is~already~used~and~you~shouldn't~use~  

2565   the~same~environment~name~twice.~You~can~go~on,~but,~  

2566   maybe,~you~will~have~incorrect~results. \\  

2567   For~a~list~of~the~names~already~used,~type~H~<return>. \\  

2568   If~you~don't~want~to~see~this~message~again,~use~the~option~  

2569   'allow-duplicate-names'.  

2570 }
2571 {  

2572   The~names~already~defined~in~this~document~are:~  

2573   \seq_use:Nnnn \g_@@_names_seq { ,~ } { ,~ } { ~and~ }.  

2574 }

2575 \@@_msg_new:nn { Invalid-specification~for~MultiArrow }  

2576 {  

2577   Invalid~specification.\\  

2578   The~specification~of~rows~for~\token_to_str:N\MultiArrow\  

2579   (i.e.~#1)~is~invalid. \\  

2580   \c_@@_command_ignored_str  

2581 }

```

## 12.15 The command `\WithArrowsNewStyle`

A new key defined with `\WithArrowsNewStyle` will not be available at the local level.

```

2582 (*LaTeX)  

2583 \NewDocumentCommand \WithArrowsNewStyle { m m }  

2584 {/LaTeX}  

2585 (*plain-TeX)  

2586 \cs_new_protected:Npn \WithArrowsNewStyle #1 #2  

2587 {/plain-TeX}  

2588 {  

2589   \keys_if_exist:nnTF { WithArrows / Global } { #1 }  

2590     { \@@_error:nn { Key-already-defined } { #1 } }  

2591     {  

2592       \seq_clear:N \l_tmpa_seq  

2593       \keyval_parse:NNn \@@_valid_key:n \@@_valid_key:nn { #2 }  

2594       \seq_if_empty:NTF \l_tmpa_seq  

2595         {  


```

First, we detect whether there is unknown keys in #2 by storing in `\l_tmpa_seq` the list of the unknown keys.

```

2592       \seq_clear:N \l_tmpa_seq  

2593       \keyval_parse:NNn \@@_valid_key:n \@@_valid_key:nn { #2 }  

2594       \seq_if_empty:NTF \l_tmpa_seq  

2595         {  


```

```

2596     \seq_put_right:Nx \l_@@_options_WithArrows_seq
2597     { \tl_to_str:n { #1 } }
2598     \seq_put_right:Nx \l_@@_options_DispWithArrows_seq
2599     { \tl_to_str:n { #1 } }
2600     \seq_put_right:Nx \l_@@_options_WithArrowsOptions_seq
2601     { \tl_to_str:N { #1 } }

When we will consider that \keys_preamble:nnN (introduced in LaTeX on 2022-03-09) is widely
available, we will delete that test and keep only the first version.

2602 \cs_if_exist:NTF \keys_preamble:nnN
2603 {
2604     \keys_preamble:nnN
2605     { WithArrows / WithArrowsOptions }
2606     { #2 }
2607     \l_tmpa_tl
2608     \@@_key_define:nV { #1 } \l_tmpa_tl
2609 }
2610 {
2611     \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / Global }
2612     {
2613         #1 .code:n =
2614         { \keys_set:nn { WithArrows / WithArrowsOptions } { #2 } }
2615     }
2616 }
2617 {
2618     \@@_error:nn { Impossible-style } { #1 } }
2619 }
2620 }

2621 \@@_msg_new:nn { Impossible-style }
2622 {
2623     Impossible-style.\\
2624     It's-impossible-to-define-the-style-'#1'-
2625     because-it-contains-unknown-keys:-
2626     \seq_use:Nnnn \l_tmpa_seq { 'and' } { ',' } { ',and-' } .
2627 }

2628 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_valid_key:n #1
2629 {
2630     \keys_if_exist:nnF { WithArrows / Global } { #1 }
2631     { \seq_put_right:Nn \l_tmpa_seq { #1 } }
2632 }
2633 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_valid_key:nn #1 #2
2634 {
2635     \keys_if_exist:nnF { WithArrows / Global } { #1 }
2636     { \seq_put_right:Nn \l_tmpa_seq { #1 } }
2637 }

2638 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_key_define:nn #1 #2
2639 {
2640     \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / Global } { #1 .code:n = #2 } }
2641 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_key_define:nn { n V }

2642 \@@_msg_new:nn { Key-already-defined }
2643 {
2644     Key-already-define.\\
2645     The-key-'#1'-is-already-defined. \\
2646     If-you-go-on,-your-instruction-\token_to_str:N\WithArrowsNewStyle\
2647     will-be-ignored.
2648 }

```

## 12.16 The options up and down

The options `up` and `down` are available for individual arrows. The corresponding code is given here. It is independent of the main code of the extension `witharrows`.

This code is the only part of the code of `witharrows` which uses the the Tikz library `calc`. That's why we have decided not to load by default this library. If it is not loaded, the user will have an error only when using the option `up` or the option `down`.

The keys `up` and `down` can be used with a value. This value is a list of pairs key-value specific to the options `up` and `down`.

- The key `radius` is the radius of the rounded corner of the arrow.
- The key `width` is the width of the horizontal part of the arrow. The corresponding dimension is `\l_@@_arrow_width_dim`. By convention, a value of 0 pt for `\l_@@_arrow_width_dim` means that the option `width` has been used with the special value `min` and a value of `\c_max_dim` means that it has been used with the value `max`.

```

2648 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / up-and-down }
2649 {
2650   radius .dim_set:N = \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim ,
2651   radius .value_required:n = true ,
2652   width .code:n =
2653     \str_case:nnF { #1 }
2654     {
2655       { min } { \dim_zero:N \l_@@_arrow_width_dim }
2656       { max } { \dim_set_eq:NN \l_@@_arrow_width_dim \c_max_dim }
2657     }
2658     { \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_arrow_width_dim { #1 } } ,
2659   width .value_required:n = true ,
2660   unknown .code:n = \@@_error:n { Option-unknown-for-up-and-down }
2661 }
2662 \@@_msg_new:nn { Option-unknown-for-up-and-down }
2663 {
2664   Unknown-option.\
2665   The-option-'\l_keys_key_str'-is-unknown.-\c_@@_option_ignored_str
2666 }
```

The token list `\c_@@_tikz_code_up_tl` is the value of `tikz-code` which will be used for an option `up`.

```

2667 (*LaTeX)
2668 \tl_const:Nn \c_@@_tikz_code_up_tl
2669 {
```

First the case when the key `up` is used with `width=max` (that's the default behaviour).

```

2670 \dim_compare:nNnTF \l_@@_arrow_width_dim = \c_max_dim
2671 {
2672   \draw [ rounded-corners = \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim ]
2673   let \p1 = ( #1 ) , \p2 = ( #2 )
2674   in (\p1) -- node
2675   {
2676     \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim { \x2 - \x1 }
2677     \begin{varwidth} \l_tmpa_dim
```

a `\narrowraged` is a command of the package `varwidth`.

```

2678   \narrowraged
2679   #3
2680   \end{varwidth}
2681 }
2682 (\x2,\y1) -- (\p2) ;
2683 }
```

Now the case where the key `up` is used with `width=value` with `value` equal to `min` or a numeric value. The instruction `\path` doesn't draw anything: its aim is to compute the natural width of the label of the arrow. We can't use `\pgfextra` here because of the `\hbox_gset:Nn`.

```

2684 {
```

```

2685     \path
2686         let \p1 = ( #1 ) , \p2 = ( #2 )
2687         in node
2688         {

```

The length `\l_tmpa_dim` will be the maximal width of the box composed by the environment `{varwidth}`.

```

2689             \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim
2700                 { \x2 - \x1 - \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim }
2701             \dim_compare:nNnf \l_@@_arrow_width_dim = \c_zero_dim
2702             {
2703                 \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim
2704                     { \dim_min:nn \l_tmpa_dim \l_@@_arrow_width_dim }
2705             }

```

Now, the length `\l_tmpa_dim` is computed. We can compose the label in the box `\g_tmpa_box`. We have to do a global affectation to be able to exit the node.

```

2706             \hbox_gset:Nn \g_tmpa_box
2707             {
2708                 \begin{varwidth} \l_tmpa_dim
2709                     \narrowraged
2710                     #3
2711                 \end{varwidth}
2712             }

```

The length `\g_tmpa_dim` will be the width of the arrow (+ the radius of the corner).

```

2713             \dim_compare:nNnTF \l_@@_arrow_width_dim > \c_zero_dim
2714                 { \dim_gset_eq:NN \g_tmpa_dim \l_@@_arrow_width_dim }
2715                 { \dim_gset:Nn \g_tmpa_dim { \box_wd:N \g_tmpa_box } }
2716                 \dim_gadd:Nn \g_tmpa_dim \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim
2717             } ;
2718             \draw
2719                 let \p1 = ( #1 ) , \p2 = ( #2 )
2720                 in (\x2-\g_tmpa_dim,\y1)
2721                     -- node { \box_use:N \g_tmpa_box }
2722                     (\x2-\l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim,\y1)
2723                     [ rounded_corners = \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim ]
2724                     -| (\p2) ;
2725             }
2726         }
2727     
```

```

2728 
```

```

2729 
```

```

2730 \tl_const:Nn \c_@@_tikz_code_up_tl
2731 {
2732     \dim_case:mnF \l_@@_arrow_width_dim
2733     {
2734         \c_max_dim
2735         {
2736             \draw [ rounded_corners = \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim ]
2737                 let \p1 = ( #1 ) , \p2 = ( #2 )
2738                 in (\p1) -- node { #3 } (\x2,\y1) -- (\p2) ;
2739         }
2740         \c_zero_dim
2741         {
2742             \path node
2743             {
2744                 \hbox_gset:Nn \g_tmpa_box { #3 }
2745                 \dim_gset:Nn \g_tmpa_dim
2746                     { \box_wd:N \g_tmpa_box + \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim }
2747             } ;
2748             \draw
2749                 let \p1 = ( #1 ) , \p2 = ( #2 )
2750                 in (\x2-\g_tmpa_dim,\y1)
2751                     -- node { \box_use:N \g_tmpa_box }
2752                     (\x2-\l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim,\y1)

```

```

2742     [ rounded-corners = \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim ]
2743     -| (\p2) ;
2744   }
2745 }
2746 {
2747 \draw
2748   let \p1 = ( #1 ) , \p2 = ( #2 )
2749   in (\x2 - \l_@@_arrow_width_dim - \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim,\y1)
2750   -- node { #3 } (\x2-\l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim,\y1)
2751   [ rounded-corners = \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim ]
2752   -| (\p2) ;
2753 }
2754 }
2755 
```

The code for an arrow of type `down` is similar to the previous code (for an arrow of type `up`).

```

2756 {*LaTeX}
2757 \tl_const:Nn \c_@@_tikz_code_down_tl
2758 {
2759   \dim_compare:nNnTF \l_@@_arrow_width_dim = \c_max_dim
2760   {
2761     \draw [ rounded-corners = \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim ]
2762       let \p1 = ( #1 ) , \p2 = ( #2 )
2763       in (\p1) -- (\x1,\y2) -- node
2764       {
2765         \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim { \x1 - \x2 }
2766         \begin{varwidth}{\l_tmpa_dim}
2767           \narrowraged
2768           #3
2769         \end{varwidth}
2770       }
2771       (\p2) ;
2772   }
2773 {
2774   \path
2775     let \p1 = ( #1 ) , \p2 = ( #2 )
2776     in node
2777     {
2778       \hbox_gset:Nn \g_tmpa_box
2779       {
2780         \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim

```

The 2 mm are for the tip of the arrow. We don't want the label of the arrow too close to the tip of arrow (we assume that to the tip of the arrow has its standard position, that is at the end of the arrow.).

```

2781           { \x1 - \x2 - \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim - 2 mm }
2782           \begin{varwidth}{\l_tmpa_dim}
2783             \narrowraged
2784             #3
2785           \end{varwidth}
2786         }
2787         \dim_compare:nNnTF \l_@@_arrow_width_dim > \c_zero_dim
2788         {
2789           \dim_gset_eq:NN \g_tmpa_dim \l_@@_arrow_width_dim
2790           \dim_gset:Nn \g_tmpa_dim { \box_wd:N \g_tmpa_box }
2791           \dim_gadd:Nn \g_tmpa_dim \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim
2792         } ;
2793
2794 \draw
2795   let \p1 = ( #1 ) , \p2 = ( #2 )
2796   in (\p1)
2797   { [ rounded-corners = \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim ] -- (\x1,\y2) }
2798   -- (\x1-\l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim,\y2)
2799   -- node { \box_use:N \g_tmpa_box } (\x1-\g_tmpa_dim,\y2)

```

```

2799         -- ++ (-2mm,0) ;
2800     }
2801   }
2802 
```

`</LaTeX>`

```

2803 %
2804 
```

`(*plain-TeX)`

```

2805 \t1_const:Nn \c_@@_tikz_code_down_tl
2806 {
2807   \dim_case:nnF \l_@@_arrow_width_dim
2808   {
2809     \c_max_dim
2810     {
2811       \draw [ rounded~corners = \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim ]
2812         let \p1 = ( #1 ) , \p2 = ( #2 )
2813         in (\p1) -- (\x1,\y2) -- node { #3 } (\p2) ;
2814     }
2815   \c_zero_dim
2816   {
2817     \path node
2818     {
2819       \hbox_gset:Nn \g_tmpa_box { #3 }
2820       \dim_gset:Nn \g_tmpa_dim
2821         { \box_wd:N \g_tmpa_box + \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim }
2822     } ;
2823     \draw
2824       let \p1 = ( #1 ) , \p2 = ( #2 )
2825       in (\p1)
2826         { [ rounded~corners = \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim ] -- (\x1,\y2) }
2827         -- (\x1-\l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim,\y2)
2828         -- node { \box_use:N \g_tmpa_box } (\x1-\g_tmpa_dim,\y2)
2829         -- ++ (-2mm,0) ;
2830     }
2831   }
2832   {
2833     \draw
2834       let \p1 = ( #1 ) , \p2 = ( #2 )
2835       in (\p1)
2836         { [ rounded~corners = \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim ] -- (\x1,\y2) }
2837         -- (\x1-\l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim,\y2)
2838         -- node { #3 }
2839           (\x1 - \l_@@_arrow_width_dim - \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim,\y2)
2840         -- ++ (-2mm,0) ;
2841     }
2842   }
2843 
```

`</plain-TeX>`

We recall that the options of the individual arrows are scanned twice. First, when are scanned when the command `\Arrow` occurs (we try to know whether the arrow is “individual”, etc.). That’s the first pass.

```

2844 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / Arrow / FirstPass }
2845 {
2846   up .code:n = \@@_set_independent_bis: ,
2847   down .code:n = \@@_set_independent_bis: ,
2848   up .default:n = NoValue ,
2849   down .default:n = NoValue
2850 }
```

The options are scanned a second time when the arrow is actually drawn. That’s the second pass.

```

2851 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / Arrow / SecondPass }
2852 {
2853   up .code:n =
2854     \str_if_empty:NT \l_@@_previous_key_str
```

```

2855      {
2856          \str_set:Nn \l_@@_previous_key_str { up }
2857          \cs_if_exist:cTF { tikz@library@calc@loaded }
2858          {
2859              \keys_set:nV { WithArrows / up-and-down } \l_keys_value_tl
2860              \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int 1
2861          \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_wrap_lines_bool
2862      The main action occurs now. We change the value of the tikz-code.
2863          \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_tikz_code_t1 \c_@@_tikz_code_up_t1
2864          }
2865          { \@@_error:n { calc-not-loaded } }
2866      },
2867      down .code:n =
2868          \str_if_empty:NT \l_@@_previous_key_str
2869          {
2870              \str_set:Nn \l_@@_previous_key_str { down }
2871              \cs_if_exist:cTF { tikz@library@calc@loaded }
2872              {
2873                  \keys_set:nV { WithArrows / up-and-down } \l_keys_value_tl
2874                  \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int 1
2875                  \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_wrap_lines_bool
2876                  \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_tikz_code_t1 \c_@@_tikz_code_down_t1
2877                  }
2878                  { \@@_error:n { calc-not-loaded } }
2879              }
2880 \seq_put_right:Nn \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq { down }
2881 \seq_put_right:Nn \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq { up }
2882 \@@_msg_new:nn { calc-not-loaded }
2883 {
2884     calc-not-loaded.\\
2885     You~can't~use~the~option~'\l_keys_key_str'~because~you~don't~have~loaded~the~
2886     Tikz~library~'calc'.~You~should~add~'\token_to_str:N\usetikzlibrary{calc}'~
2887     ~in~the~preamble~of~your~document.~\\
2888     \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2889 }
2890 <*plain-TeX>
2891 \catcode `\: = 12
2892 \ExplSyntaxOff
2893 </plain-TeX>
```

## 13 History

### Changes between 2.7 and 2.8

New key `right-overlap`

### Changes between 2.6b and 2.7

Correction of a bug: when the key `wrap-lines` was in force, the content of the annotations was not “flush left” by default as it should be (but justified).

### Changes between 2.6 and 2.6a (and 2.6b)

Replacement of `\hbox_unpack_clear:N` by `\hbox_unpack_drop:N` since `\hbox_unpack_clear:N` is now deprecated in L3.

Version 2.6d: correction of a bug (cf. question 628461 on TeX StackExchange).

## Changes between 2.5 and 2.5.1

Correction of the erroneous programmation of the nodes aliases.

## Changes between 2.4 and 2.5

Arrows of type `o` which are *over* other arrows.  
`witharrows` now requires and loads `varwidth`

## Changes between 2.3 and 2.4

Correction of a bug with `{DispWithArrows}` : cf. question 535989 on TeX StackExchange.

## Changes between 2.2 and 2.3

Two options for the arrows of type up and down: `width` and `radius`.

## Changes between 2.1 and 2.2

Addition of `\normalbaselines` at the beginning of `\@@_post_halign:`.  
The warning for an environment ending by `\\"` has been transformed in `error`.

## Changes between 2.0 and 2.1

Option `max-length-of-arrow`.  
Validation with regular expression for the first argument of `\MultiArrow`.

## Changes between 1.18 and 2.0

A version of `witharrows` is available for plain-TeX.

## Changes between 1.17 and 1.18

New option `<...>` for `{DispWithArrows}`.  
Option `subequations`.  
Warning when `{WithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows}` ends by `\\"`.  
No space before an environment `{DispWithArrows}` if we are at the beginning of a `{minipage}`.

## Changes between 1.16 and 1.17

Option `format`.

## Changes between 1.15 and 1.16

Option `no-arrows`  
The behaviour of `{DispWithArrows}` after an `\item` of a LaTeX list has been changed : no vertical is added. The previous behaviour can be restored with the option `standard-behaviour-with-items`. A given name can no longer be used for two distinct environments. However, it's possible to deactivate this control with the option `allow-duplicate-names`.

## Changes between 1.14 and 1.15

Option `new-group` to start a new group of arrows (only available when the environment is composed with the option `groups`).

Tikz externalization is now deactivated in the environments of the extension `witharrows`.<sup>42</sup>

---

<sup>42</sup>Before this version, there was an error when using `witharrows` with Tikz externalization. In any case, it's not possible to externalize the Tikz elements constructed by `witharrows` because they use the options `overlay` and `remember picture`.

## Changes between 1.13 and 1.14

New options `up` and `down` for the arrows.

Replacement of some options `\O{ }{ }` in commands and environments defined with `xparse` by `! \O{ }{ }` (a recent version of `xparse` introduced the specifier `!` and modified the default behaviour of the last optional arguments: <http://www.texdev.net/2018/04/21/xparse-optional-arguments-at-the-end>).

Modification of the code of `\WithArrowsNewStyle` following a correction of a bug in `l3keys` in the version of `l3kernel` of 2019/01/28.

New error message `Inexistent-v-node` to avoid a `pgf` error.

The error `Option incompatible with 'group(s)'` was suppressed in the version 1.12 but this was a mistake since this error is used with the option `xoffset` at the local level. The error is put back.

## Changes between 1.12 and 1.13

Options `start-adjust`, `end-adjust` and `adjust`.

This version is not strictly compatible with previous ones. To restore the behaviour of the previous versions, one has to use the option `adjust` with the value `0 pt`:

```
\WithArrowsOptions{adjust = Opt}
```

## Changes between 1.11 and 1.12

New command `\tagnextline`.

New option `tagged-lines`.

An option of position (`ll`, `lr`, `rl`, `rr` or `i`) is now allowed at the local level even if the option `group` or the option `groups` is used at the global or environment level.

Compatibility of `{DispWithArrows}` with `\qedhere` of `amsthm`.

Compatibility with the packages `refcheck`, `showlabels` and `listlbls`.

The option `\AllowLineWithoutAmpersand` is deprecated because lines without ampersands are now always allowed.

## Changes between 1.10 and 1.11

New commands `\WithArrowsNewStyle` and `\WithArrowsRightX`.

## Changes between 1.9 and 1.10

If the option `wrap-lines` is used, the option “`text width`” of `Tikz` is still active: if the value given to “`text width`” is lower than the width computed by `wrap-lines`, this value is used to wrap the lines.

The option `wrap-lines` is now fully compatible with the class option `leqno`.

Correction of a bug: `\nointerlineskip` and `\makebox[.6\linewidth]{}{}` should be inserted in `{DispWithArrows}` only in vertical mode.

## Changes between 1.8 and 1.9

New option `wrap-lines` for the environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}`.

## Changes between 1.7 and 1.8

The numbers and tags of the environment `{DispWithArrows}` are now compatible with all the major `LaTeX` packages concerning references (`autonum`, `cleveref`, `fancyref`, `hyperref`, `prettyref`, `refstyle`, `typedref` and `variorref`) and with the options `showonlyrefs` and `showmanualtags` of `mathtools`.

## Changes between 1.6 and 1.7

New environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}`.

## Changes between versions 1.5 and 1.6

The code has been improved to be faster and the Tikz library `calc` is no longer required.  
A new option `name` is available for the environments `{WithArrows}`.

## Changes between versions 1.4 and 1.5

The Tikz code used to draw the arrows can be changed with the option `tikz-code`.  
Two new options `code-before` and `code-after` have been added at the environment level.  
A special version of `\Arrow` is available in `code-after` in order to draw arrows in nested environments.  
A command `\MultiArrow` is available in `code-after` to draw arrows of other shapes.

## Changes between versions 1.3 and 1.4

The package `footnote` is no longer loaded by default. Instead, two options `footnote` and `footnotehyper` have been added. In particular, `witharrows` becomes compatible with `beamer`.

## Changes between versions 1.2 and 1.3

New options `ygap` and `ystart` for fine tuning.

## Changes between versions 1.1 and 1.2

The package `witharrows` can now be loaded without having loaded previously `tikz` and the libraries `arrow.meta` and `bending` (this extension and these libraries are loaded silently by `witharrows`).  
New option `groups` (with a *s*)

## Changes between versions 1.0 and 1.1

Option for the command `\\"{} and option interline  
Compatibility with \usetikzlibrary{babel}  
Possibility of nested environments {WithArrows}`

## Contents

<b>1 Options for the shape of the arrows</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>2 Numbers of columns</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>3 Precise positioning of the arrows</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>4 The option 'o' for individual arrows</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>5 The options 'up' and 'down' for individual arrows</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>6 Comparison with the environment {aligned}</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>7 Arrows in nested environments</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>8 Arrows from outside environments {WithArrows}</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>9 The environment {DispWithArrows}</b>	<b>17</b>
9.1 The option <...> of DispWithArrows . . . . .	22

<b>10 Advanced features</b>	<b>23</b>
10.1 Use with plain-TeX	23
10.2 The option tikz-code : how to change the shape of the arrows	23
10.3 The command \WithArrowsNewStyle	24
10.4 The key right-overlap	24
10.5 Vertical positioning of the arrows	25
10.6 Footnotes in the environments of witharrows	26
10.7 Option no-arrows	27
10.8 Note for the users of AUCTeX	27
10.9 Note for developpers	27
<b>11 Examples</b>	<b>27</b>
11.1 \MoveEqLeft	27
11.2 A command \DoubleArrow	28
11.3 Modifying the shape of the nodes	28
11.4 Examples with the option tikz-code	29
11.4.1 Example 1	29
11.4.2 Example 2	30
11.4.3 Example 3	30
11.5 Automatic numbered loop	31
<b>12 Implementation</b>	<b>32</b>
12.1 Declaration of the package and extensions loaded	32
12.2 The packages footnote and footnotehyper	33
12.3 The class option leqno	35
12.4 Collecting options	35
12.5 Some technical definitions	35
12.6 Variables	38
12.7 The definition of the options	41
12.8 The command \Arrow	49
12.9 The environments {WithArrows} and {DispWithArrows}	51
12.9.1 Code before the \halign	51
12.9.2 The construction of the preamble of the \halign	54
12.9.3 The environment {WithArrows}	56
12.9.4 After the construction of the \halign	58
12.9.5 The command of end of row	59
12.9.6 The environment {DispWithArrows}	63
12.10 The commands \tag, \notag, \label, \tagnextline and \qedhere for {DispWithArrows}	68
12.11 We draw the arrows	70
12.11.1 The command update_x	80
12.11.2 We draw the arrows of type o	80
12.12 The command \Arrow in code-after	83
12.13 The command \MultiArrow in code-after	85
12.14 The error messages of the package	87
12.15 The command \WithArrowsNewStyle	93
12.16 The options up and down	94
<b>13 History</b>	<b>99</b>